4767

HR70-14

CENTRAL INTELLIGENCE AGENCY
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20505

29 September 1977

MEMORANDUM FOR: The Director of Central Intelligence

FROM : Theodore G. Shackley
Acting Deputy Director for Operations

SUBJECT : USSR GENERAL STAFF OPERATIONS MANUAL:
Part II - Ground Forces Operations

1. The enclosed Intelligence Information Special Report is part of a series based on five manuals, classified SECRET, published by the General Staff of the Armed Forces of the USSR in 1963 as a basic guide for command personnel. This report is a translation from Russian of a manual on ground forces operations at the front, army and corps level. It consists of an introduction and eight chapters dealing with general principles, political work, the principles of ground forces operations, offensive operations, airborne landings, defensive operations, regroupings, and rear services support. The Russian text was disseminated as [redacted] HR70-14

2. Because the source of this report is extremely sensitive, this document should be handled on a strict need-to-know basis within recipient agencies.

[redacted]

Theodore G. Shackley

TS #778264
Copy # 3

[redacted]

Distribution:

The Director of Central Intelligence

The Director of Intelligence and Research
Department of State

The Joint Chiefs of Staff

The Director, Defense Intelligence Agency

The Assistant to the Chief of Staff for Intelligence
Department of the Army

Director of Naval Intelligence
Department of the Navy

The Assistant Chief of Staff, Intelligence
U. S. Air Force

Director, National Security Agency

Deputy Director of Central Intelligence

Deputy to the Director of Central Intelligence
for National Intelligence Officers

Deputy Director for Intelligence

Director of Strategic Research

Director of Weapons Intelligence

[redacted]

Intelligence Information Special Report

COUNTRY USSR

DATE OF INFO. 1963

DATE 29 September 1977

SUBJECT

GENERAL STAFF OPERATIONS MANUAL: Part II - Operations of the Ground Forces

SOURCE Documentary

Summary:

The following report is a translation from Russian of a SECRET General Staff manual on the organization and conduct of ground forces operations at the front, army and corps level. Intended as a basic guide for the command personnel of operational formations, it consists of an introduction and eight chapters dealing with general principles, political work, the principles of ground forces operations, offensive operations, airborne landings, defensive operations, regroupings, and rear services support. Such operations as meeting engagements and amphibious landings, as well as the peculiarities of offensive and defensive operations under the adverse conditions of mountain, desert and northern areas, are given comprehensive treatment.

End of Summary

Comment:

TS #778264
Copy #12

GENERAL STAFF OF THE ARMED FORCES OF THE USSR

SECRET
Copy No. ____

MANUAL
ON THE CONDUCT OF OPERATIONS

PART II

GROUND FORCES OPERATIONS

(Front-Army-Corps)

Moscow 1963

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TS # 778264
Copy # 3

TS # 778264
Copy # 3

INTRODUCTION

Marxism-Leninism teaches us that "war is simply a continuation of politics by other (namely, forcible) means"... (V. I. Lenin, Works, Volume 21, page 194). Each time, as soon as aggressive states have not succeeded in achieving their predatory goals by peaceful means, they have resorted to armed violence, to war. And at the present time the only source of military danger is imperialism. The imperialist camp is preparing the most terrible crime against humanity -- a nuclear world war, which can cause the unprecedented destruction of entire countries and exterminate entire peoples. But in the present era war is not a fatal inevitability. In the world arena there is a continual increase in the preponderance of the forces of socialism over imperialism, of the forces of peace over the forces of war. The time has come when the new world war being prepared by the imperialists can be prevented by the united efforts of the powerful socialist camp, the peaceloving non-socialist states, the international working class, the national liberation movement, and all progressive forces fighting for the cause of peace. However, as long as imperialism with its aggressive nature continues to exist, grounds for the occurrence of wars and the danger of having them unleashed will remain.

Under present-day conditions, although we cannot exclude the possibility of war among capitalist countries in view of the varied contradictions present among them, nevertheless the imperialists are preparing for war primarily against the countries of socialism, and in the first place, against the Soviet Union as the most powerful of the socialist states.

At the same time, to achieve their expansionist goals, aggressive imperialist states have already been resorting to the unleashing of various local wars and have been openly intervening in wars of liberation.

With the present-day alignment of forces in the world arena, if the imperialists succeed in unleashing a future war, it will most likely become a world war between the two powerful coalitions of states belonging to the two opposing social systems -- the capitalist and the socialist.

Since there are present irreconcilable contradictions between the capitalist and socialist systems, in this war, both sides will pursue the most decisive political and military goals. This will be the most acute class conflict, the most extreme means of resolving the historical problem of the struggle between the capitalist and socialist social systems.

Imperialist preparations to unleash a new war are being carried out along all lines. In the political field this is expressed by opposition to a solution of the problem of disarmament and to a relaxation of international tension, by strengthening and expanding aggressive military blocs, by whipping up war psychosis, by fascistizing and strengthening reaction within the imperialist states, by ideologically preparing the population, and by strengthening the ideological struggle in the world arena. In the economic field, preparations for a new war are expressed by the continuous buildup of the production of modern types of weapons, particularly of nuclear weapons and of the means for their employment, by maintaining a number of branches of industry in mobilization readiness, by preparing all industry and transportation for a rapid reorganization to wartime operation, and by preparing the theaters of military operations.

The imperialists have been carrying out preparations most actively in the military sphere. They have encircled the socialist countries with numerous military bases. The United States and other members of aggressive imperialist blocs, especially NATO, at the present time maintain in constant readiness large-scale armed forces -- strategic aviation, missiles, fleets, ground forces, and tactical aviation, with a considerable portion of them deployed in appropriate groupings located near the borders of the socialist countries. The imperialists are doing everything in order to have the capability of unleashing war by surprise at any moment opportune for them.

All of this imperatively requires the Soviet Armed Forces to manifest a high level of vigilance, to increase their combat readiness in every way possible, and to master modern means and methods of conducting military actions. The present Manual has been called upon to serve this purpose. It is the basic guide for command personnel on organizing and conducting the military actions of operational formations of all branches of the Armed

Forces.

The manual gives recommendations on the methods of preparing and conducting combat actions with operational formations of the Armed Forces under conditions of the extensive employment of means of mass destruction. The following are set forth as the bases of these actions:

-- to employ nuclear weapons, first and foremost strategic means, most efficiently in order to inflict a decisive defeat on the enemy;

-- to exploit the results of nuclear strikes in a timely manner with ground forces, aviation, and the navy for the final defeat of the enemy;

-- to conduct continuous warfare against enemy nuclear attack means; and

-- to carry out with timeliness measures permitting the maintenance and rapid restoration of the combat readiness of units and large units under conditions of actions against them by enemy nuclear weapons.

It should be taken into consideration, however, that under present-day conditions war may also be conducted without the employment of nuclear weapons, particularly in a local war. In this case, the primary means of destruction will be conventional ~~weapons,~~ first and foremost tanks, artillery, aviation, the navy, and other means having their own characteristic forms and methods of conducting combat actions.

The Manual sets forth as fundamental the combat actions of the initial period of a future nuclear war. As concerns the combat actions of the subsequent periods of the war, only general instructions are presented on possible changes in the methods of preparing and conducting them.

All principles, instructions, and recommendations set forth in the Manual must be applied creatively, in accordance with the specific situation that has developed.

TS # 778264
Copy # 3

CHAPTER 1

GENERAL PRINCIPLES

The likely nature of a future war

1. The nature of war and the methods of waging it depend directly on the level of development of the productive forces, social system, and economy of the belligerent countries and on the status and development of the means of warfare. A future world war will inevitably assume the nature of a nuclear war, in which the principal means of destruction will be nuclear weapons possessing vast destructive power and speed of action, with missiles -- first and foremost strategic missiles -- being the primary means of delivering them against a target. In addition to nuclear weapons, chemical and biological means of warfare may be employed in this war.

In a future war conventional types of weapons will be employed along with means of mass destruction. They will be employed to accomplish the most varied tasks, both independently and in cooperation with new types of weapons.

In a future war, various means of space warfare may be employed. In particular, the employment of reconnaissance and navigational satellites, of satellites for communications and jamming, and, later on, of satellites, orbiting aircraft, and other space flight vehicles as nuclear weapons carriers will be of great practical importance. In this connection, combat against enemy space means may become especially important.

In a future war radioelectronic equipment will become very important, supporting the combat employment of many types of weapons, and supporting reconnaissance, control, guidance, navigation, warfare against enemy radioelectronic means, and also the automation and mechanization of all processes of control and combat employment of the forces and means of armed conflict.

2. All of these modern combat means, especially missile and nuclear weapons, are being widely introduced in all branches of the armed forces and are bringing about fundamental qualitative changes in them. They increase their striking power, fire power, and combat capabilities; they generate a need for the further

improvement of organizational structures, and they require the employment of fundamentally new methods of conducting combat actions.

In the very first minutes of a future war the targets of the nuclear strikes might be: strategic means of warfare, industrial and administrative centers, the most important links of governmental and military control, and also groupings of armed forces deployed in the theaters of military operations. A future world war will inevitably become the most destructive in history; it will assume unprecedented spatial scope and will inevitably encompass all continents, seas, and oceans and may spread into space.

The decisiveness of the goals of both sides and the employment of nuclear weapons and other means of mass destruction foreordain the tense and fierce nature of the war. Each side will strive to conduct aggressive military actions in order to achieve its assigned goals.

A future war will be conducted by massive, multimillion-man armed forces. Despite the fact that nuclear weapons will play the decisive role in the war, final victory over an enemy can be achieved only as a result of the joint actions of all branches of the armed forces.

3. Imperialist states believe that for them to achieve their expansionist purposes, the decisive condition is to unleash war by a surprise nuclear attack on the Soviet Union and the other socialist countries.

The imperialists may also initiate a future world war by unleashing local conflicts. In these cases, the war may spread by involving many of the world's states and acquire the nature of a world war in which the capitalist states will emerge on one side and the socialist states on the other.

4. The massed employment of nuclear weapons and other means of mass destruction at the beginning of a war against the most important targets in the depth of a territory and against the groupings of armed forces in the theaters of military operations create real possibilities for quickly defeating and putting out of the war entire countries, particularly those having a small

territory. In countries having a large territory, all vitally important centers may be destroyed, which will significantly undermine the capability of these countries to wage war. Therefore, the principal goals of a future war may be achieved in a relatively short period of time.

We must also not exclude the fact that achieving the goals of a war against an imperialist coalition, which possesses vast military power, considerable materiel and human resources, and also a large territory to maneuver in, may require a comparatively extended period of time.

5. The strategic war goals assigned to the Armed Forces are achieved by:

-- delivering nuclear strikes against administrative-political, scientific, and industrial centers, and against strategic means of waging war, important troop groupings, and other installations in the deep rear of the countries of the enemy coalition;

-- conducting aggressive combat actions with decisive goals in the land and naval theaters;

-- conducting a stubborn and energetic air defense and antimissile defense of the country and of Armed Forces groupings.

Nuclear strikes by the Strategic Rocket Forces, long-range aviation, and missile submarines against vitally important rear installations and strategic means of waging war will allow us to completely disorganize the enemy's rear, economy, and governmental control system and destroy his strategic means of nuclear attack. Such strikes can be delivered against the enemy's most important installations and troop groupings in the depth of the theaters of military operations.

As a result of these strikes the military power of enemy states will be undermined in a short period of time and conditions will be established favoring the conduct of subsequent military actions by all branches of the Armed Forces.

Combat actions in land theaters should focus on completing the rout of the enemy's ground forces in the wake of the nuclear

strikes, on seizing his territory, and on not allowing enemy troops to penetrate into our territory.

The conduct of air defense and antimissile defense by the Air Defense (Antimissile Defense) Forces of the Country is a very important type of military action with the help of which we achieve the defeat of the air enemy and repel the strikes of his aircraft, missiles, and space means against the most important industrial and administrative-political centers, and also against armed forces groupings and other important targets in the depth of the country.

Combat actions in naval theaters have the goal of routing the enemy's naval forces, destroying important shore installations, first and foremost fleet basing areas, and disrupting or stopping his sea and ocean shipments. This will help weaken the effective employment of nuclear weapons by the enemy and reduce his military power.

All types of military actions should be carried out with coordination by goal, by time, and by space and should be rapid, decisive, and offensive in nature. Any delay in developing such actions, let alone any orientation toward a passive defense, can spell disaster.

6. The initial period of a war is of decisive importance for its course and even for its outcome.

The initial period of a war must be understood to mean that segment of time from the moment war breaks out until the immediate strategic goals are achieved. The main substance of this period is the immediate delivery of powerful nuclear strikes against the enemy with the simultaneous repelling of his air attack and the development and conduct of aggressive military actions in the land and naval theaters. To conduct combat actions from the beginning of a war, the maximum possible number of forces and means that are in readiness at this time are allocated, with the building up of their strength as new contingents are deployed.

The combat actions of the armed forces will become highly mobile from the very inception of war. An acute struggle for the initiative will be the basis of these actions. Such combat

actions will inevitably be attended by rapid and drastic changes in the situation.

Under these conditions, the rapid and decisive actions of each operational formation and large unit will be of paramount importance, as will the firm, flexible, and continuous control of troops, forces, and means by all command levels, and also the display of personal initiative by each commander of a large unit, unit, or ship.

Simultaneously with the conduct of aggressive military actions in the initial period of the war, measures will be persistently carried out to complete the full mobilization of the first strategic echelon of the armed forces and to carry out the mobilization expansion of subsequent echelons and also to shift the national economy over to planned wartime production, regardless of whatever destruction and losses have been incurred from enemy nuclear strikes.

7. Under conditions of a possible surprise attack by an aggressor, the main purpose of the military operations of the Soviet Armed Forces in the initial period of the war will be to disrupt the enemy's nuclear strikes, seize the strategic initiative in the very first hours of the war, undermine his military economic power, disorganize his governmental control, inflict destructon upon the enemy armed forces, disrupt their mobilization expansion, and by these means ensure the achievement of complete victory over them. To do this, the Armed Forces must have well-organized reconnaissance of all types, capable of providing advance warning of preparation for an attack; they must possess high combat readiness, exceeding the enemy's combat readiness, and be capable of immediately beginning and conducting decisive combat actions under any complex conditions of the situation. The Strategic Rocket Forces and Air Defense (Antimissile Defense) Forces of the Country must be at the highest level of readiness to conduct combat actions, as must aviation, naval forces (submarines, naval missile-carrying aircraft, and antisubmarine forces), Ground Forces large units, and formations of border military districts and groups of forces, all of which are maintained in constant readiness.

8. The carrying out of the mobilization expansion of the Armed Forces must be prepared in advance and supported

comprehensively.

To accomplish this we must: organize reliable warning about mobilization, organize cover and protection of the mobilization assembly areas and forming-up areas of units and large units, provide these units with continuous communications, organize troop movements and materiel shipments, and adopt measures for ensuring the survivability of lines of transportation and for protecting the means of transport.

Taking into consideration the difficulty of a mobilization expansion at the initiation of war, we must investigate the possibilities of secretly carrying out measures to strengthen forces before military actions are initiated. A number of measures to reinforce the Armed Forces and bring them up to an increased degree of combat readiness may be accomplished in the period of threat which may precede the beginning of a war. This period's duration may be very short and it must be exploited to the maximum to directly prepare the Armed Forces for war.

9. The successful development and conduct of combat actions at the initiation of war will depend primarily on the degree of readiness for it on the part of the Armed Forces, the national economy, the territory of the country, and the entire Soviet nation.

All measures in preparation for a war and for its conduct must be thoroughly planned ahead of time and comprehensively supported. The plans worked out must correctly estimate the military-political factors of the outset of a war, the development of the means and methods of conducting it, and the real balance of forces; and these plans must be strictly coordinated among themselves. The plans must be updated with timeliness as a result of the continuous improvement of the means and methods of conducting combat actions, the rapid development of the economy and science, and drastic changes in the international situation.

The Soviet Armed Forces and the nature of their actions

10. The Soviet Armed Forces are called upon to defend the gains of the Great October Socialist Revolution and the freedom and independence of the Soviet people, who are building

communism, and to selflessly defend the state interests of the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics against the encroachments of imperialist aggressors. The international missions of the Soviet Union also require that its Armed Forces, together with the armed forces of the other socialist countries, be ready to ensure the security of the entire socialist camp. To successfully accomplish these tasks the Soviet Armed Forces have everything required: personnel who are highly conscientious and devoted to their Homeland, who are equipped with powerful nuclear weapons, missiles for varying purposes, and other new modern military equipment; the forces are led by the Communist Party of the Soviet Union -- Lenin's great party -- its Central Committee, and the Soviet Government.

The Soviet Armed Forces must be ready to achieve victory in a short period of time over a strong enemy possessing all types of modern weapons and other military equipment.

11. The Soviet Armed Forces are composed of: Strategic Rocket Forces, Ground Forces, Air Defense (Antimissile Defense) Forces of the Country, Air Forces, and the Navy, which are the branches of the Armed Forces.

Each branch of the Armed Forces consists of branch arms, intended to accomplish specific combat tasks in accordance with their armament. To support the combat activities of the branches of the Armed Forces, their complement includes special troops and services.

In organization, the branches of the Armed Forces consist of operational formations and separate large units intended to accomplish operational and strategic tasks. These operational formations include the following: the front, the air defense district, the fleet, the army (~~missile army~~, combined-arms army, tank army, air defense army, and ~~air army~~) the flotilla, and the fleet aviation. The composition of operational formations is not permanent; it is determined depending on their intended purpose, the tasks being accomplished, the conditions of the theater of military operations, and the importance of the axes on which they are operating. In the composition of operational formations there are: operational-tactical large units -- corps, squadrons, naval bases; and tactical large units -- divisions, brigades, and also separate units.

12. The Strategic Rocket Forces are the principal branch of the Armed Forces. They are intended to destroy administrative-political, scientific, and industrial centers and strategic nuclear attack means; to demolish the enemy's economic base for the conduct of war, to disorganize life in enemy coalition countries, and to rout major groupings of the enemy armed forces.

The Strategic Rocket Forces are composed of formations and large units armed with intercontinental and medium-range missiles. They also have in their complement missile technical bases (RTB) and subunits and units of special troops: radiotechnical troops, engineer troops, chemical troops, communications troops, and motor transport troops. Furthermore, they also have units and subunits of topogeodetic support, meteorological support, and rear services.

13. The Ground Forces, retaining their importance as one of the primary branches of the Armed Forces, will play a decisive role in a future war in the final defeat of the enemy in the land theaters of military operations and in seizing his territory.

The Ground Forces are composed of: operational-tactical rocket troops, tank troops, motorized rifle (armored) troops, and airborne troops, artillery, and air defense troops, which are the branch arms; and special troops -- engineer troops, chemical troops, radiotechnical troops, communications troops, motor transport troops, road troops, and also rear services units and facilities.

14. The Air Defense (Antimissile Defense) Forces of the Country are intended for the air defense, antimissile defense, and space defense of very important areas, installations, and groupings of the Armed Forces in the territory of the country. They are charged with the task of preventing the enemy from delivering strikes from the air against vitally important targets of the country. They fulfil their tasks by destroying in flight the enemy's manned and unmanned means of attack and by neutralizing his radio and radiotechnical means of control and bombing.

The Air Defense (Antimissile Defense) Forces of the Country are composed of: surface-to-air missile troops, fighter aviation,

and radiotechnical troops as branch arms, and also special troops -- radio reconnaissance and jamming troops, engineer troops, chemical troops, and communications troops, and rear services units and facilities.

15. The Air Forces are intended to rout the enemy's aircraft, missile and naval groupings, to undermine his economy, to disrupt lines of transportation, and also to act jointly with ground troops and naval forces, to conduct aerial reconnaissance, to support landings, and to support troop movements and materiel shipments by air.

Combat aviation -- long range aviation and front aviation -- will obtain the most favorable conditions for its actions after effective missile/nuclear strikes have been delivered against enemy territory.

The Air Forces are composed of: long range aviation, front aviation, and military transport aviation, and also units of front cruise missiles, unmanned balloons, and special troops -- communications troops, chemical troops, radiotechnical support troops, and rear services large units, units, and facilities.

16. The Navy in a future war will carry out tasks to rout the enemy's naval forces, first of all his missile submarines and aircraft carrier strike groupings, to destroy important shore installations, administrative-political, scientific, and industrial centers in enemy territory within the range limits of submarine-launched missiles, and also tasks to disrupt or stop ocean and sea shipments. In addition, the Navy will carry out tasks to defend friendly sea lines of transportation against enemy naval attacks and cooperate with the Ground Forces in the conduct of operations on coastal axes.

The Navy is composed of: submarines of various classes and purposes, aviation, surface ships, and coastal missile and artillery troops, which are the naval branch arms; and also special-purpose units and services -- reconnaissance, chemical, communications and observation, hydrographic, and rear services units and facilities.

17. Every branch of the Armed Forces fulfills the tasks assigned to it in a war with its inherent methods of conducting

military actions and with all decisiveness and resoluteness, regardless of whatever destruction and losses have been inflicted on it by enemy missile/nuclear strikes.

The Strategic Rocket Forces accomplish their combat tasks by delivering nuclear strikes according to plans of the Supreme High Command for the purpose of destroying administrative-political, scientific, and industrial centers in the territory of the enemy, of destroying his strategic means of nuclear attack, disorganizing the vital activities of enemy states, routing the most important groupings of enemy armed forces, and thereby ensure the entire war is conducted successfully.

The initial nuclear strike prepared in advance, especially the first salvo of missiles, which should ensure the seizure of the strategic initiative and the successful conduct of operations by the other Armed Forces, is of particular importance for the successful conduct of a future war.

The Air Defense (Antimissile Defense) Forces of the Country fulfil their tasks of routing the air enemy, repelling his air strikes and missile strikes, and disrupting his air (missile, space) attacks by conducting combat actions in accordance with a unified plan.

The Ground Forces and Navy fulfil their tasks in war by conducting various operations.

An operation consists of nuclear strikes coordinated and correlated according to target, place, and time, and of highly mobile actions by operational formations and large units executed according to a unified concept in order to accomplish operational or strategic tasks.

In the Ground Forces the principal type of operation is the offensive operation. Only by carrying out a decisive offensive exploiting the entire power of nuclear strikes, delivered by both strategic and operational-tactical means, and by exploiting the combat capabilities of the troops, can we achieve the total defeat of the enemy and attain the goals of the war in the land theaters of military operations.

On individual axes, and also in secondary theaters of military operations, defensive operations may be conducted with the final goal of inflicting a defeat on attacking enemy groupings and of creating conditions for the defending forces to subsequently go over to a decisive offensive.

On coastal axes the Ground Forces, in cooperation with forces of the Navy and the Air Forces, may conduct amphibious and airborne landings or repel landings of enemy amphibious and airborne landing forces.

The Air Forces accomplish combat missions by conducting long range aviation air operations and front aviation combat actions.

Long range aviation air operations are carried out with the goal of routing the enemy's naval, aviation, and missile groupings, destroying the most important installations in his rear, disrupting his lines of transportation, and cooperating with the Ground Forces and the Navy in operations conducted by them. These air operations are carried out by all the forces of long range aviation or by only a portion of them. Front aviation, and also unmanned balloon units and aerospace means, may be called upon to participate in the air operations of long range aviation.

A long range aviation air operation is carried out by delivering strikes against specific areas, a group of installations in the enemy's territory, and also against groupings of his armed forces in the theater of military operations.

Naval operations, according to their goals, are divided into operations to destroy the enemy's naval forces, first and foremost his missile submarines and carrier large units; operations to destroy important enemy shore installations and administrative-political, scientific, and industrial centers by missile/nuclear strikes from submarines; operations to disrupt or stop ocean and sea shipments; and operations to defend friendly lines of transportation. Naval operations may also be conducted where these goals are all or partially achieved at the same time.

18. The successful accomplishment of the combat tasks and the achievement of the goals of a war can be attained only by the

joint efforts of all branches of the Armed Forces which have been coordinated with respect to the goal, place, time, and methods of fulfilling the assigned tasks. This comprises the basis of cooperation of the various branches of the Armed Forces, a cooperation which is organized on the basis of the goals of the combat actions, the nature and combat capabilities of the branches of the Armed Forces, and also on an assessment of the specific conditions of the situation.

The Strategic Rocket Forces, by fulfilling the tasks of destroying the enemy's administrative-political, scientific, and industrial centers and strategic means of nuclear attack, of disorganizing his deep rear, and of routing groupings of armed forces in land and naval theaters of military operations, create conditions favoring the conduct of operations by other branches of the Armed Forces and thereby lower the enemy's capabilities of delivering nuclear strikes against installations in our country and against the Armed Forces.

The Ground Forces, exploiting the results of the nuclear strikes delivered by the Strategic Rocket Forces, long range aviation, and naval forces, and employing airborne and amphibious landings, conduct a rapid offensive to the entire depth of the theater of military operations and accomplish the rout of the enemy's ground forces, seize his territory, and thereby ensure that the goals of the war are rapidly achieved in land theaters of military operations.

The Air Forces, neutralizing the enemy air defense system with their own means and exploiting the weakly covered air defense sectors which have been disorganized by the nuclear strikes of missiles, employ long range aviation to deliver strikes against important installations in the enemy's rear and on the coast, and independently and in cooperation with Navy forces, to destroy his aircraft carriers, missile submarines, and other naval targets; to conduct aerial reconnaissance in ocean and land theaters and to carry out target designation for submarines. Front aviation, in cooperation with operational-tactical rocket troops and surface-to-air missile troops, supports the combat actions of the ground forces, covers them against enemy aircraft and cruise missiles, supports the actions of long range aviation and military transport aviation in the frontline zone, and conducts aerial reconnaissance. Military

transport aviation carries out troop landings and delivers weapons and materiel.

The Navy, exploiting the results of strategic missile strikes against administrative-political, scientific, and industrial centers, against naval bases, ports, and shipbuilding installations of the enemy, independently and in cooperation with long range aviation destroys his naval groupings at sea or in the ocean, disrupts enemy strikes against our installations, disorganizes his ocean and sea shipments, and assists the Ground Forces in the accomplishment of tasks in the land theaters of military operations.

Air Defense (Antimissile Defense) Forces of the Country, destroying the enemy's attacking aircraft, missiles, and space means, safeguard: the normal functioning of the basic branches of industry, the organs of governmental and military control, the combat actions of the branches of the Armed Forces, and the carrying out of the mobilization expansion of the troops.

19. Maneuvering of forces and means is a major condition of the successful conduct of combat actions. Maneuver should be understood to mean the switching of strikes delivered by nuclear weapons and conventional means of destruction against new areas and targets, the shifting of troops, forces, and means to new axes in order to establish the grouping required and create a more favorable situation for it to rout the enemy. Executing a manuever in a timely manner while preserving the combat effectiveness of the troops, forces, and means ensures that combat actions achieve decisive results and that the assigned tasks are successfully accomplished.

20. The danger that an aggressor will unleash nuclear war by surprise imposes important requirements for maintaining the constant combat readiness of the Armed Forces.

The high combat readiness of the Armed Forces is ensured by:

-- technically equipping and organizing the troops in conformity with the present-day level of development of the means of warfare and the methods of conducting combat actions in a nuclear war;

-- having available and in readiness for immediate actions the necessary number of large units and units which have been brought up to full strength in personnel, weapons, transport, and in all materiel and technical means;

-- advantageously deploying the troops and basing the air and naval forces in peacetime in a manner corresponding to their combat and operational employment at the beginning of a war;

-- establishing and preparing beforehand in peacetime groupings of the armed forces capable of fulfilling the strategic tasks of the initial period of a war;

-- an excellent level of combat training of the troops and high operational training of the command personnel and staffs of operational formations;

-- having available realistic operational plans and mobilization expansion plans which have been worked out beforehand and refined on a timely basis;

-- well-organized reconnaissance which is capable of determining the enemy's concept and intentions opportunely, of detecting the grouping of his armed forces, his plans and measures in preparation for war, as well as the time periods when it may be unleashed;

-- preparing in a timely manner to carry out measures for warfare against the enemy's radioelectronic systems and means;

-- the tireless creative work of formation commanders, commanders, staffs, and political organs in leading the troops and also by maintaining the high political and morale status of the personnel of the Armed Forces;

-- establishing the necessary reserves of materiel and technical means which provide the troops with what they require to conduct combat actions in the initial period of a war, and also by dispersed and sheltered positioning of these reserves;

-- having prepared control posts available and by organizing communications beforehand;

-- carrying out in advance measures to prepare the theaters of military operations and the entire territory of the country;

-- the high vigilance of all personnel and by preserving in strict secrecy the measures carried out within the Armed Forces.

To maintain the constant combat readiness of the Armed Forces it will be necessary to adopt measures for their protection against destruction by nuclear weapons and other means of mass destruction of the enemy, to quickly eliminate the aftereffects of his nuclear strikes and his employment of other means of mass destruction, and to replace losses in personnel, combat equipment, and materiel.

21. The Soviet Armed Forces must be constantly ready, not only to act under conditions of surprise enemy attack, but also to employ surprise skilfully, which stuns the enemy, brings about disorganized and indecisive actions on his part, and forces him to adopt new plans which are often not appropriate to the situation.

Surprise is achieved:

-- by keeping secret the concept of the combat actions and our intentions and also by knowing the intentions and the nature of the possible enemy actions.

-- by carrying out troop regroupings and maneuver rapidly and secretly and by delivering swift attacks where the enemy does not expect them;

-- by skilfully implementing operational camouflage;

-- by widely exploiting nighttime and difficult weather conditions for combat actions;

-- by adhering strictly to communications discipline, the rules of secure troop control, and the established procedure for the use of radiotechnical means;

-- by employing new means and methods of conducting combat actions which are unknown to the enemy.

Surprise must be employed in all types of combat actions of the Armed Foces.

Control of troops (forces) and support of their combat actions

22. Control of troops (forces) consists in exercising constant control on the part of command and staffs over all the activity of subordinate formations, large units, and units, in directing their efforts toward the fulfilment of assigned tasks, as well as in organizing and implementing comprehensive support of combat actions.

Troop control is based on centralized control by senior commanders over all troop combat activities and on the manifestation of intelligent initiative by subordinates as they accomplish their assigned tasks. Control must be firm, continuous, and flexible.

To ensure such control requires of the command and staffs, of all generals, admirals, and officers, a high level of organizational work, a profound understanding of the nature and methods of conducting combat actions, a knowledge of present-day means of warfare, particularly missile and nuclear weapons, and of their combat capabilities and principles of employment; the ability to foresee the development of events, prompt adoption of decisions in conformity with the situation, timely transmission of tasks to the executors, and monitoring of the fulfilment of the tasks. Formation commanders, commanders, staffs, and all chiefs must show constant concern for the preparation of troops, forces, and means for combat actions and their comprehensive support, for the organization and maintenance of constant cooperation in the interest of rapidly achieving the goal of the operation (battle), and for the maintenance of the high political and morale status of the personnel and the combat effectiveness of units and large units.

Control must ensure rapidity and secrecy in preparing nuclear strikes against the enemy and surprise in delivering them, effective employment of nuclear weapons and other means of destruction, and also skilful exploitation of the results of their effect on the enemy, seizure and maintenance of the initiative, high mobility of actions, and the timely implementation of measures to protect troops, forces, and means

against weapons of mass destruction, and timely restoration of their combat effectiveness.

A formation commander (commander) controls his troops personally and through his staff. To provide control there are set up control posts with appropriate equipment, a communications system, and a radiotechnical system of detection, identification, warning, guidance, and navigation.

23. Depending on the situation, troop control may be implemented by various methods. A formation commander (commander) may personally assign combat tasks to the troops or issue brief orders -- instructions and signals utilizing technical means of communication. Instructions which have been issued orally by the formation commander (commander) in personal contact or transmitted to them by telephone are formalized in writing and transmitted to subordinates.

The daily organizational work of the formation commander (commander) and staffs right with the troops to support their combat actions and to implement strict monitoring of the fulfilment of the combat tasks must occupy an important place in troop control.

Under conditions of rapid and drastic changes in the situation, which are characteristic in modern war, the rapidity of actions by the command and staffs in controlling the troops acquires paramount importance. It is necessary to spend the least time possible in receiving and processing data on the situation, in producing operational and tactical calculations, in adopting decisions and assigning tasks to troops, and in organizing cooperation and support.

In connection with the increased threat of having troop control disrupted and severed due to the use of nuclear weapons and jamming means, it has become very important to ensure the reliability and continuity of control, to maintain the survivability of control posts and of the system of communications, detection, warning, guidance, and navigation, and also to rapidly restore disrupted control. To do this it is necessary to disperse control posts and reliably shelter them and adopt other measures for protection against means of mass destruction, to thoroughly camouflage them, to provide

radiotechnical means with reliable protection against enemy jamming means, and to maintain the high discipline of the personnel of the control organs.

24. The highest organ of control of the Armed Forces in war is the Supreme High Command, which exercises control over them through the General Staff.

The commanders-in-chief and main staffs of the branches of the Armed Forces bear full responsibility for the constant combat readiness, technical equipping, and activation of large units and units in accordance with mobilization expansion plans, and for the combat training level of the troops and forces of their branches of the Armed Forces.

The commanders-in-chief and main staffs of the Rocket Forces, Air Defense (Antimissile Defense) Forces of the Country, Air Forces, and Navy are responsible for the timely fulfilment of the combat tasks confronting the troops (forces) subordinate to them, for the organization and maintenance of control, and for combat and materiel-technical support.

Control of party-political work in the Armed Forces is exercised by the Central Committee of the Communist Party of the Soviet Union through the Chief Political Directorate of the Soviet Army and Navy, operating with the authority of a department of the Central Committee of the Communist Party of the Soviet Union.

Control of the rear services of all branches of the Armed Forces is exercised by the Supreme High Command through the Deputy Minister of Defense and Chief of the Rear of the Armed Forces of the USSR, who works in close contact with the General Staff.

The Deputy Minister of Defense and the Chief of the Rear of the Armed Forces of the USSR bears full responsibility for the materiel-technical and medical support and servicing of the troops (forces) within the limits of the services subordinated to him.

25. The formation commander (commander) bears full responsibility for the constant combat readiness of subordinate

troops and for the organization and successful accomplishment by them of the assigned combat tasks.

In accordance with tasks received, the formation commander (commander) adopts a decision for combat actions, assigns tasks to the operational formations and large units, organizes control and cooperation, as well as the preparation of the troops and their support.

During combat actions the formation commander (commander) controls subordinate troops, directing their efforts toward the fulfilment of the assigned tasks. In doing this, he must constantly maintain communications with subordinate commanders, the higher commanders, and the commanders of cooperating troops; monitor the fulfilment of assigned tasks, assign supplementary tasks, and exert direct influence on the course of combat actions. To do this, the formation commander (commander) must always have at his disposal means of control with which he may communicate at any time with subordinate commanders and chiefs.

26. The staff is the principal organ of troop control. Its most important duty is to organize combat actions with timeliness and to ensure continuous control of the troops under all conditions of the situation. A staff carries out all of its work of organizing combat actions and of providing control on the basis of the decisions and instructions of the formation commander(commander) and the higher staff.

The main substance of the work of a staff is: to obtain and analyze data on the situation, to plan combat actions in accordance with the decision adopted by the formation commander (commander), to transmit tasks to the troops with timeliness, to organize preparation of the troops, cooperation, and support, to monitor the fulfilment of assigned tasks, and also to systematically inform the higher staff and the subordinate staffs of changes in the situation. Organizing control posts and communications is one of the duties of a staff.

The chief of staff is a first deputy of the formation commander (commander) and he organizes the work of the staff and the entire headquarters of the formation (large unit). Only the chief of staff has the authority, in the name of the formation commander (commander), to issue instructions to the troops and

also to the chiefs of branch arms and services subordinate to the formation commander (commander). He is obligated to know the situation and be ready to report to the formation commander (commander) his conclusions based on it and his recommendations on the decision. The chief of staff bears the responsibility of organizing and providing continuous troop control.

27. The chiefs of branch arms, special troops, and services of a formation (large unit) are assistants of the formation commander (commander) for the combat employment of their branch arms and services. In accordance with the decision of the formation commander (commander) and instructions of the chief of staff, they organize the combat employment of the troops (services) subordinate to them and bear responsibility for the successful accomplishment of the tasks assigned to them and for the materiel and technical support of the troops according to their specialty.

28. The chief of the rear of a formation (large unit) is the deputy formation commander (commander) for the rear; he organizes the rear services and bears responsibility for the preparation of the lines of transportation, for the timely delivery of materiel by all types of transportation, for evacuation, and also for materiel and technical support by subordinate services, and for medical and veterinary support. He organizes the security and defense of the rear.

29. Troop control is organized on the basis of the decision of the formation commander (commander). The adoption of a sound decision which best conforms to the situation is possible on the condition that there is a clear understanding of the higher commander's concept, of the goal of the impending combat actions and of the assigned tasks, of the methods of accomplishing them, that the situation is correctly assessed, and that there is operational foresight.

When assessing the enemy, one should first of all determine his capabilities to employ nuclear weapons, then determine his forces and means, grouping, intentions, and weaknesses and strengths. When assessing our own forces, we must base ourselves on the availability and capabilities of our nuclear means, and take into consideration the radiation situation, the operational situation, the status of the troops and of their supplies, and

the terrain and weather conditions.

The decision must be based on the employment of nuclear weapons and the anticipated results of their effects. This determines the employment of all forces and means to achieve the assigned goals.

The commander's decision determines the following: the concept of the combat actions, the targets of nuclear strikes, the yield and types of nuclear bursts, the combat tasks of subordinate formations and large units, and the organization of control.

The commander's decision is transmitted to the executors by personal assignment of the task, in the form of an operational directive (combat order) or separate combat instructions, transmitted by technical means of communications using codes and secure communications devices, and also through staff officers. For the purposes of orienting subordinate commanders and staffs in advance on forthcoming actions and preparation of the troops, the staff of the formation (large unit) issues preliminary instructions to them. The content of directives (orders) and instructions must be clear and concise to the utmost, setting forth only that information and instructions which are required by subordinate commanders to comprehend the assigned task, adopt a decision, and prepare the troops for combat actions.

30. The staff, in accordance with the commander's decision, works out together with the chiefs of branch arms and services a clear and concise plan of the operation (combat actions), which concretely sets forth the procedure and methods of fulfilling the assigned tasks and the principal measures for support of the combat actions.

When planning an operation (combat actions), in all instances the staff works out only the necessary documents without which the contemplated troop control measures cannot be successfully implemented.

The number of documents, their content, and the completeness and systematicness with which topics are set forth in them must be determined in each case by taking the situation and forthcoming actions into consideration. The working out of

detailed and extensive plans, the compilation of which sometimes requires the expenditure of as much time as is required in the conduct of the operation itself, must not be permitted and must be stopped.

31. A paramount duty of formation commanders, commanders, and staffs of all levels is to organize cooperation and to maintain it continuously throughout combat actions. Organizing cooperation consists in coordinating the actions of operational formations and large units of various branches of the Armed Forces, branch arms, and special troops by goal, place, time, and methods of accomplishing the assigned tasks and in directing their efforts toward achieving the assigned goals. Cooperation must be carried out continuously and when disrupted, it must be reestablished immediately.

When organizing cooperation, it is necessary to consider the real combat capabilities of the cooperating troops, forces, and means. Particular attention must be devoted to the coordinated employment of branches of the Armed Forces, to the timely exploitation by fronts, fleets, and long range aviation large units of the results of massed nuclear strikes by the Strategic Rocket Forces, and also to the coordination of the actions of formations, large units, and units of every branch of the Armed Forces.

Formation commanders, commanders, and staffs of cooperating troops must understand correctly the goal of the forthcoming combat actions and the tasks of the operational formations; they must know the situation, have reliable communications among themselves, and systematically carry out mutual informing.

32. During combat actions all control organs of the Armed Forces must direct the efforts of the troops (forces) toward fulfilling the assigned tasks in conformity with the developing situation. These organs are required to be highly organized, precise, and rapid in their work, to be able to grasp a complex situation in a timely manner, to assign additional tasks, to organize their fulfilment, and to firmly control the troops.

33. To accommodate control organs and control the combat actions of the troops, control posts are established. These posts must be protected against the effects of nuclear weapons

and other means of mass destruction, equipped with the appropriate control and communications means, dispersed, and thoroughly camouflaged and guarded. Control posts for control of troops at the beginning of a war are established ahead of time. Control organs and control posts must be in constant readiness to immediately assume troop control under all conditions of the situation. Bringing them up to increased combat readiness and setting up operation in them is carried out by a signal or instruction of the General Staff.

34. Continuity of troop control is achieved by establishing a developed and stable communications system. Communications are organized by using radio, radio-relay, and wire means with appropriate remote-control equipment, and also by using messenger means -- aircraft, helicopters, and others.

To control troops, a unified system of communications is organized from top to bottom via all control posts. This system must ensure the rapid transmission of instructions, signals, and commands, and provide warning and the passage of information. It is necessary to ensure continuous communications not only with the immediate subordinate formation commander (commander) and staff but also with one level lower, and in the Rocket Forces -- down to the missile launcher, in long range aviation -- down to the aircraft, and in the Navy -- down to and including the submarine and the surface ship of the third rank.

The primary means of troop control at the beginning of combat actions will be radio and radio-relay communications. Therefore, while it is still peacetime, staffs should master to perfection the methods of controlling troops by radio and radio-relay means.

When organizing a communications system, measures must be taken to ensure security, radio camouflage, and protection against enemy jamming. When using various communications means, one should adhere strictly to the rules of secure troop control. Chiefs of staff are assigned the responsibility for observance of the rules of secure troop control and radio camouflage.

To increase the reliability of a communications system, extensive use should be made of alternate and auxiliary communications centers upon which control posts of formations and

large units will be able to rely when they move to new areas or when primary communications centers go out of action.

35. For detection of targets, identification, warning, and guidance of missiles, aircraft, and submarines, and for navigation support of aircraft and naval forces, radar, radio navigation, radio communications, radio remote control, and electronic computer means, and other technical means are used. The chief of staff is assigned the responsibility for organizing the detection, identification, warning, guidance, and navigation systems. When organizing the use of radiotechnical means in operations, measures must be taken to combat enemy radio and radiotechnical reconnaissance and to protect against jamming, and also prevent mutual interference when our own radiotechnical means are operating simultaneously.

One of the conditions for continuous and efficient troop control is the widespread introduction into the system of control of new means of communications, mechanization, and automation: automatic secure communications devices for speech, signals, and transmissions of all types; signal coding devices, means of minor mechanization, and electronic computers, which will lighten the work of commanders and staff officers and also speed up many-fold the accomplishment of all the work of troop control.

36. Combat actions must be comprehensively and thoroughly supported. Organizing the support of combat actions constitutes one of the basic duties of formation commanders (commanders) and staffs.

The principal types of support of combat actions pertaining to all branches of the Armed Forces are: reconnaissance, protection of troops and rear services installations against weapons of mass destruction, engineer support, operational camouflage, warfare against radioelectronic means, hydrometeorological support, topogeodetic support, and rear services support. All of these types of support are organized when combat actions are being prepared. The measures planned for each type of support are carried out both before and during combat actions. Furthermore, special types of support are organized which pertain only to a particular branch of the Armed Forces.

37. Reconnaissance is organized for the purpose of: discovering the enemy's concept and the possible nature of his actions, detecting with timeliness direct preparations for attack and determining its initiation, ascertaining the composition and grouping of his forces and means and the targets for destruction, determining the presence of new enemy weapons and military equipment and identifying their principal tactical-technical characteristics and methods of employment, and determining the results of the delivery of nuclear strikes. An important task of reconnaissance is to detect the nature of: the enemy's military economic, political, and other important installations, his air defense and antimissile defense system, and also his control posts, communications centers, and various radiotechnical systems. Reconnaissance must concentrate its main efforts on detecting with timeliness the enemy's grouping of forces and means of nuclear attack and his intentions about the time and place of their employment, and on determining the coordinates of major targets and objectives for the delivery of nuclear strikes.

The General Staff is the principal organ directing the organization of reconnaissance.

Reconnaissance is conducted energetically and continuously. It must obtain accurate data on the enemy in the shortest possible time periods, process the data with timeliness, and transmit them to the appropriate formation commanders, commanders and staffs, continuously track the targets (objectives) detected and the changes in their positions, and be able to differentiate between real and dummy targets. To pinpoint the coordinates of detected targets before delivering nuclear strikes against them, final reconnaissance of the targets can be carried out by calling upon the most effective and fast-acting forces and means of reconnaissance for this purpose.

To obtain data on the enemy, forces and means of all types of reconnaissance are employed, primarily agent reconnaissance, air reconnaissance, ship reconnaissance, radio reconnaissance, and radiotechnical reconnaissance. Particularly wide employment should be made of technical means of reconnaissance, which are based on the use of radioelectronics, space means, Earth satellites, and also of all types of air reconnaissance means. To conduct reconnaissance, especially of enemy nuclear means, reconnaissance groups infiltrated (dropped) into the enemy's rear

can be employed with great success. The main forces and means of reconnaissance should be concentrated on the main axis and in support of the accomplishment of the most important tasks. Reconnaissance of the most important targets (objectives) should be carried out by the joint efforts of all branches of the Armed Forces, utilizing all methods and means of reconnaissance available to them. Reconnaissance data on enemy means of nuclear attack that have been detected must be transmitted above all precedence and by any means of communications.

The commander of front (fleet, army) forces determines the most important tasks of reconnaissance. He indicates which tasks the principal efforts of reconnaissance are to be concentrated on accomplishing and what data he must have and by what time during the preparation and course of the operation. The front (fleet, army, corps) staff organizes reconnaissance; this includes: planning reconnaissance, assigning reconnaissance tasks to the executors, monitoring the conduct of reconnaissance, collecting and processing reconnaissance data, reporting the data to the formation commander (commander) and to the higher staff, and also informing the troops and adjacent forces.

When organizing reconnaissance, the command and staff must simultaneously take decisive measures to combat enemy reconnaissance activities, employing any means to stop the actions of enemy reconnaissance and to promptly destroy its forces and means.

38. Protecting troops and rear services installations against weapons of mass destruction is organized with the aim of preventing the destruction of troops and rear services installations by nuclear, chemical, and bacteriological weapons or of reducing as much as possible the results of their actions, and with the aim of preserving the combat effectiveness of the troops and of ensuring that they succeed in accomplishing the tasks assigned to them.

The principal measures for protecting troops and rear services installations are: to conduct continuous radiation, chemical, and bacteriological reconnaissance and to warn personnel in time about radioactive, chemical, and bacterial contamination; to disperse and camouflage troops, forces, and means, and to skilfully exploit the protective features of the

terrain; to change troop deployment (disposition) areas periodically; to select the most expedient methods of negotiating contaminated zones and of ensuring that personnel are protected when operating for an extended time on contaminated terrain; to carry out on a timely basis preparation of movement routes and engineer preparation of the areas being occupied by troops and rear services units and facilities; to constantly monitor the radioactive irradiation of personnel; to provide the troops and rear services organs in a timely manner and fully with means of individual and group protection, decontamination means, and also with radiation and chemical reconnaissance instruments; to carry out sanitary-hygienic and special prophylactic measures among the troops and among the local populace; and also to adopt urgent and effective measures to eliminate the aftereffects of the enemy's employment of weapons of mass destruction.

Simultaneously with the organization of protection, measures are taken to detect on a timely basis enemy means of mass destruction and destroy them immediately with missile and air strikes and by artillery fire.

The commander of an operational formation exercises overall control over the organization of protection against nuclear weapons and other means of mass destruction. Based on his decision and instructions, the formation staff and the chiefs of branch arms, special troops, and services plan and organize the employment of the forces and means at their disposal to protect troops and rear services installations against nuclear weapons and other means of mass destruction.

All measures to protect troops against weapons of mass destruction are accomplished by organic forces and means of the troops; only when the radiation, epidemic, and chemical situations become drastically difficult in the areas of troop actions, and also when eliminating the aftereffects of the enemy employment of weapons of mass destruction, are provisions made to reinforce the troops with chemical defense units, units of engineer troops, and sanitary-antiepidemic facilities, and the required protective means allocated.

39. Measures to protect troops and rear services installations against weapons of mass destruction are organized and carried out in close cooperation with civil defense staffs,

forces, and means.

To support formations (large units) of the branches of the Armed Forces, civil defense subunits and units can carry out radiation, chemical, and bacteriological reconnaissance; warn staffs, troops, and rear services installations; participate in the conduct of sanitary-hygienic and special prophylactic measures among the troops; and render assistance to the troops in eliminating the aftereffects of the enemy's employment of weapons of mass destruction.

In necessary cases, by decision of the formation commander (large unit commander), individual large units and units can be detailed to help civil defense organs eliminate the aftereffects of enemy nuclear strikes in cities and major population centers. However, this must not weaken the efforts of the troops to fulfil the assigned combat task.

40. Radiation, chemical, and bacteriological reconnaissance is conducted by all branch arms and special troops. Chemical troops accomplish the most difficult tasks of radiation and chemical reconnaissance, and the medical service carries out bacteriological reconnaissance.

Radiation reconnaissance over extensive areas, and also on separate axes (routes of march) is carried out on helicopters (aircraft).

A radiation and chemical situation map is maintained in the operations directorate (department) of the staff, in the rear staff, and in the department of the chief of chemical troops in order to collate the results of the radiation, chemical, and bacteriological reconnaissance. The radiation, chemical, and bacteriological reconnaissance data are used to refine operational decisions and to determine deployment areas for the troops and rear services installations.

The staff of the operational formation organizes troop warning about radioactive, chemical, and bacterial contamination so that the troops will take necessary protective measures in time. To do this, all available communications channels are used, and uniform signals, warning procedures, and troop action procedures are established.

All commanders and staffs continuously monitor and calculate the radioactive irradiation of the personnel.

41. Eliminating the aftereffects of the enemy's employment of weapons of mass destruction is carried out for the purpose of restoring the combat effectiveness of the troops in a short period of time and of creating conditions for them to successfully accomplish the assigned tasks. This includes: reestablishing troop control that has been disrupted; rescue work and medical treatment and evacuation measures in the centers of massive medical casualties; organizing medical observation and conducting special prophylactic measures for personnel who have received a dose of radiation exceeding permissible limits or who are located in centers of chemical and bacterial contamination; decontaminating personnel and carrying out radioactive, chemical, and biological decontamination of armament, combat equipment, clothing, personal equipment, terrain, and defense works; clearing and restoring routes for troop maneuver, delivery, and evacuation, restoring or setting up new shelters and obstacles, and extinguishing fires that threaten the safety of personnel and equipment or hinder troop movement; taking isolation-restriction measures, establishing quarantine for troops, and organizing a drive against pathogenic organisms in the centers of bacterial contamination; purifying water of radioactive and poisonous material and bacterial agents, and decontaminating foodstuffs.

42. Engineer support is organized for the purpose of creating conditions favoring the timely and concealed deployment of troops, their successful conduct of combat actions, and of increasing the protection of personnel and combat equipment against enemy means of destruction.

Engineer support includes: organizing and conducting continuous engineer reconnaissance; preparing troop deployment positions and areas and ship basing points; constructing, restoring, and maintaining launching sites and positions of the rocket troops, airfields, and airfield structures in combat-ready status; clearing and setting up obstacles; preparing troop movement routes; preparing and maintaining crossings over water obstacles; preparing control posts and rear services installations; carrying out engineer measures to protect against weapons of mass destruction and to eliminate the aftereffects of enemy nuclear strikes; carrying out engineer measures for

operational and tactical camouflage; obtaining, purifying, and decontaminating water; and supplying troops with engineer equipment and repairing it.

Engineer support measures are accomplished both by the troops themselves and by the engineer troops of all branches of the Armed Forces in close cooperation on the basis of a unified concept and plan of the operation. The more complex tasks and also those tasks associated with the mechanization of work are assigned to the engineer troops.

43. Operational camouflage is carried out for the purpose of deceiving the enemy concerning the true location and nature of the forthcoming actions of our forces, the concept of our combat actions, and the positions and times of employment of our nuclear weapons and other means of mass destruction. The major task of operational camouflage is to conceal from the enemy the true location of our main grouping of troops and aviation, nuclear and missile means and the preparations to employ them, the maneuver and regrouping of troops, also to display dummy positions, especially of means of mass destruction. Operational camouflage is an important measure ensuring the achievement of surprise in an operation. It is organized according to instructions of the Supreme High Command by the staffs of the front, the fleet, and the air defense district, and by the staffs of armies operating on separate operational axes.

Success in operational camouflage is attained by a precise, timely, and efficient fulfilment of the measures provided for in the operational camouflage plan, by centralized control of it, by systematic monitoring when it is being prepared and carried out, by allocation of the necessary forces and means to fulfil the planned measures, and by preservation of the secrecy of the operational camouflage concept and plan.

Troops, forces, and means in the numbers required are called upon to implement operational camouflage and wide use is made of camouflage equipment and simulative, radiotechnical, and smoke means; deception of the enemy is put into effect by using means of communication, radio broadcasting, the press, and agent intelligence; and feints and demonstration actions of troops are also organized.

When implementing operational camouflage it is very important to organize and carry out radio camouflage for the purpose of concealing from enemy radio reconnaissance our radiotechnical systems and means of controlling weapons and troops (forces), and also to deceive the enemy by creating a dummy radiotechnical environment.

The principal methods of radio camouflage are: imposing a condition of complete or partial radio silence in necessary instances; detecting and eliminating characteristic reconnaissance identification features in the operation of one's own radiotechnical systems and means; carrying out dummy radio traffic and using radio means and radio operating data in the former deployment (basing) areas of large units and formations that have departed; adhering to strict radio and radio-relay communications discipline; and limiting the number of radiotechnical means that are working and also limiting their working times and emitting power.

Constant radio monitoring of the observance of established radio camouflage measures and of the procedure for the use of radiotechnical systems and means of control must be organized.

44. Warfare against the enemy's radioelectronic means is organized for the purpose of: disrupting or impeding his control of missile weapons, troops, aviation, fleets, antiaircraft means and ground artillery; precluding or limiting the enemy's use of radioelectronic means of detecting and of guiding aircraft against a target; and disorganizing his air and naval navigation systems.

These purposes are achieved by: neutralizing by jamming the enemy's principal radioelectronic systems and means, destroying his major control posts and radioelectronic means, and radar camouflage of one's own troops (forces) and rear services installations.

The principal method of warfare against enemy radioelectronic means is to neutralize them with jamming means. To do this, we use the onboard means of missiles, aircraft, and ships; SPETSNAZ ground radio and radiotechnical units, and troop and naval radio means that have been adapted for this.

The most important enemy radioelectronic installations and control posts are destroyed by aircraft and missile strikes, artillery fire, and also by the actions of landing forces and specially prepared groups.

Radar camouflage is carried out by special means integrally with other camouflage measures.

Warfare against enemy radioelectronic means is organized by the staffs of the front, the fleet, the air defense district, and the armies and carried out according to an overall plan with the coordinated efforts of all forces and means allocated. The fundamental principle of warfare against enemy radioelectronic means is surprise and massed employment of all forces and means allocated for this purpose on the main axes and at decisive moments of the operation.

The effectiveness of warfare against enemy radioelectronic means is ensured by well-organized, continuous reconnaissance, by a skilful distribution of the forces and means allocated to neutralize the enemy's radioelectronic system, by correctly assigning tasks to them in conformity with the overall plan and the course of combat actions, by establishing the procedure for the use of jamming, and by organizing the cooperation of SPETSNAZ units with radio reconnaissance and the troops using radioelectronic means.

Concurrent with neutralizing and disorganizing the enemy's radioelectronic systems, the staffs of the front, the fleet, the air defense district, and the armies organize the conduct of effective measures to ensure stable control and the uninterrupted operation of their radioelectronic means under conditions of enemy jamming, measures to reduce mutual interference when one's own radioelectronic means are operating, and also radio camouflage measures to conceal one's own troops from enemy reconnaissance.

45. Hydrometeorological support of combat actions is organized for the purpose of determining and calculating the effect of hydrometeorological conditions on troop combat actions and especially on the conduct of measures protecting troops and services installations against weapons of mass destruction.

Hydrometeorological support includes: preparing for staffs, troops and rear services the meteorological data needed for the combat employment of missiles and aircraft (the ballistic characteristics of the atmosphere and general weather conditions); providing forecasts and calculations on radioactive, chemical and bacterial contamination, and calculating the effect of hydrometeorological conditions on the accomplishment of measures protecting troops and rear services installations against means of mass destruction.

Data on the hydrometeorological situation are obtained by continuous hydrometeorological observation and hydrometeorological reconnaissance using modern technical means of the meteorological service and also by studying hydrometeorological descriptions of the areas of combat actions and by studying weather forecasts and data on the condition of seas, rivers, canals, lakes, and swamps.

46. Topogeodetic support of combat actions has the aim of preparing and of transmitting to the troops in good time the topogeodetic data needed by formation commanders, commanders, and staffs to study and assess the terrain as well as to make calculations when planning, preparing, and conducting combat actions.

Topogeodetic support includes: supplying troops with topographic maps, plans, and catalogs of the coordinates of geodetic points; developing geodetic control (datum point) networks in the siting areas of rocket troops and artillery; accomplishing gravimetric work and topogeodetic tie-in of the elements of the combat formations of missile and artillery units, aviation, and air defense troops; preparing and delivering to the troops special maps and other reference materials about the terrain; and preparing data needed by troops for terrain orientation and target designation within a single system of coordinates.

Topogeodetic support measures are accomplished by the efforts of military topographic service units and subunits, subunits of the topogeodetic services of the branches of the Armed Forces and branch arms, and by the troops themselves in close cooperation based on the unified concept and plan of the operation. The more complex tasks are accomplished by units

(subunits) of the military topographic service.

47. Rear services support has the purpose of comprehensively and continuously satisfying the requirements of the troops (forces) for various materiel and technical means in order to successfully accomplish the combat tasks confronting them, of establishing the conditions needed by troops for their living and everyday activities, and of carrying out in certain cases the evacuation of unnecessary and captured equipment.

Rear services support includes the array of measures to organize the rear, to prepare and utilize all types of transportation routes and transport, to provide materiel, technical, medical, airfield engineer, airfield technical, veterinary, and other types of support to the troops (forces), and, in the Navy, to provide in addition, engineer, chemical, and salvage-and-rescue support.

48. The operational rear services are made up of rear services large units, units, and facilities, with reserves of materiel, which form a part of operational formations. To the operational rear services belong the rear services of the front, the air defense district, the fleet, the army (missile army, combined-arms army, tank army, air army, air defense army), the flotilla, the fleet aviation, and the naval base.

Rear services zones (areas) can be designated for the positioning and work of rear services units, large units, and facilities. These include a territory having motor transport, rail, water, and air routes, communications structures, and also the local facilities available in the given area.

The operational rear services are organized in conformity with the situation and the formation commander's decision for the conduct of combat actions. Organizing the operational rear services includes: preparing, deploying, and relocating missile technical units, formation bases, hospital bases, railroad large units, road large units, motor transport large units, pipeline large units, and other rear services units and facilities for the purpose of comprehensively supporting combat actions under all conditions of a situation; and it also includes measures for protection, defense, and security of rear services installations with the aim of achieving a stable system of rear services

support for the troops. The grouping of rear services units, large units, and facilities and their positioning must correspond to the concrete conditions of the situation, conform to the groupings of troops (forces) and the tasks they are to fulfil, ensure constant readiness for maneuver, and ensure the best utilization of all rear services forces and means in the operation as well as their survivability.

For the purpose of ensuring the constant readiness of the operational rear services in operations of the initial period of a war, it is necessary to: have in constant readiness the minimum necessary rear services units and facilities which are capable of deploying in short periods of time to support combat operations; establish in advance and properly echelon, disperse, and reliably shelter reserves of materiel at the prescribed levels; constantly have in the hands of the troops mobile reserves of materiel which will ensure the conduct of combat actions under conditions when the delivery of materiel from supply bases is disrupted; plan the measures for troop rear services support in advance on the basis of calculations and the conditions of the possible situation; and make provisions for measures to ensure the rapid full mobilization of rear services units and facilities.

In the operations of the initial period of war, the operational rear services are organized on the basis of the rear services units and facilities -- those deployed in peacetime and ones being newly activated -- of the rocket forces, military districts, groups of forces, armies, formations and large units of the air forces, districts and armies of the Air Defense of the Country, fleets, and flotillas.

49. Materiel support is implemented according to the types of supply and as a rule according to the schematic: center-formation-large unit-unit. The basic types of materiel are: missiles, nuclear warheads, missile propellant, fuel, ammunition, means of protection against weapons of mass destruction, rations, combat equipment of all types, and personal equipment. Levels of reserves are prescribed by the higher command in accordance with the requirements for them for the operation and with the allotted limits. The available reserves to be established in formations by the beginning of an operation must provide for the requirements of the troops (forces) for the entire operation.

The deputy commander for the rear organizes materiel support jointly with the chiefs of branch arms, special troops, and services, in accordance with the specific conditions of the situation and the tasks to be fulfilled.

50. Technical support is organized for the purpose of maintaining armament, combat equipment, and a variety of auxiliary equipment in combat-effective status, and it includes: preparing armament, combat and auxiliary equipment, and repair and recovery means in order to accomplish the forthcoming tasks; servicing and maintaining (preserving) all types of armament, and missile equipment, armored equipment, motor vehicle and tractor equipment, naval equipment and other combat equipment; and evacuating and repairing damaged equipment and armament.

The principal task of technical support in operations is to restore damaged equipment and armament in a short period of time with the goal of putting the maximum number of them back into action during an operation. This is achieved by rapidly moving forward repair means into the areas where armament and equipment have been put out of action, by repairing first of all the equipment requiring the least amount of work; by using unit methods of repair and creating reserves of ready assemblies, components and parts, and by coordinated utilization of repair and recovery units (facilities).

Technical support is organized by the chiefs of branch arms, special troops, and services in accordance with the instructions of the commander of the operational formation.

51. Medical support is organized for the purpose of: maintaining the combat effectiveness and improving the health of troop personnel, providing timely medical assistance on the spot to the wounded and sick, evacuating them, giving them medical treatment, and returning them to the ranks as quickly as possible, and preventing the development and spread of diseases.

The basis of medical support of the troops is the organization and efficient conduct of medical evacuation measures by moving medical facilities forward to the centers of massive medical casualties for the purpose of providing timely medical assistance to the wounded and sick in these areas.

To prevent the development and spread of disease when the enemy employs weapons of mass destruction, sanitary-hygienic and prophylactic measures are carried out, including the following: maintaining troop deployment areas in proper sanitary condition, applying special compounds, implementing preventive inoculations and isolation-restriction measures, and carrying out strictly the regulations on personal hygiene and on procedures for using rations and drinking water.

52. The delivery of materiel and fuel is carried out by rail, motor, water, air, and pipeline transport, using them in an integrated manner. In all cases, responsibility for the timely delivery of materiel to subordinate operational formations (large units) rests with the deputy commander for the rear of the front, the air defense district, and the fleet (army). He plans the delivery of materiel and determines the procedures for using the transport means of all rear services levels.

Rail lines, motor roads, water routes, air routes, and also pipelines are prepared and used to support all branches of the Armed Forces, the rocket troops first of all.

On rail lines (water routes), regulating and unloading stations (ports) are prepared. At the junction points of rail lines of differing gauge, and also at the junction points of rail lines with water routes, transshipment bases are established. For the purposes of ensuring continuous military shipments by rail lines (water routes), when there are prolonged interruptions of traffic on them due to the destruction of individual transport facilities, temporary transshipment areas are set up. Bypassing the destroyed facilities, the cargoes are delivered by motor transport and air transport, and fuel, in addition, is delivered by pipelines.

53. Road support includes: reconnoitering motor roads, repairing, restoring, and constructing roads and bridges, maintaining them in a trafficable condition, providing them with technical coverage and performing road traffic control service. Motor roads are prepared with regard for the special features of shipping missile equipment. When missiles, special warheads, and missile propellant are being shipped, the road traffic control service is reinforced.

54. For the purposes of ensuring the survivability of the operational rear services, on the lines of transportation and in the deployment areas of rear services large units, units, and facilities, there are carried out: measures to protect them against weapons of mass destruction, antiaircraft and ground defense and security, technical coverage of roads, camouflage, and firefighting measures. Protection against means of mass destruction and the defense and security of the rear services are organized within the overall system of operational support and are implemented by the forces and means of the rear services and by special security units, and, only in necessary instances, by engineer, chemical, and other units and subunits additionally allocated by the formation commanders.

55. To control the rear services, a rear control post is organized headed by the deputy commander for the rear. The rear staff, and all organs in charge of the support of the troops (forces) and not within the complement of the command posts, are located in the rear control post.

CHAPTER 2

POLITICAL WORK IN WARTIME

General principles of political work in the Armed Forces

56. The principal source of the military might of the Soviet Armed Forces consists in the fact that their organizer, leader, and tutor is the Communist Party -- the guiding and directing force of Soviet society.

The very foundation of the military structure is Communist Party control of the Armed Forces and the strengthening of the role and influence of Party organizations in the Army and Navy.

The foundation of party political work in the Soviet Armed Forces is: putting into practice the policy of the Communist Party and the decisions of the Central Committee of the CPSU, rallying the personnel around the Communist Party and Soviet government, indoctrinating soldiers in the ideas of Marxism-Leninism, in the spirit of love for their homeland and readiness to protect it without sparing either efforts or life itself for this, and strengthening military discipline and one-man command.

57. In present-day war, together with the increased role of equipment, there is an immeasurable growth in the importance of the morale of the troops. The course and outcome of a war will depend to a decisive degree on people who possess high morale, political, and fighting qualities and know how to exploit the full power of new weapons and equipment. Fostering a high morale and fighting spirit in the troops is achieved by continuous and purposeful political work among the personnel of the army, aviation, and navy.

Carrying out political work with the personnel and their communist indoctrination is a major duty of all communists, commanders (chiefs), and political workers.

58. Political work in the Armed Forces is carried out on the basis of the Programs and Regulations of the CPSU, the decisions of the congresses of the Communist Party, the Central Committee of the CPSU, and the Soviet government, the orders and directives

of the Supreme High Command, and the directives and instructions of the Chief Political Directorate of the Soviet Army and Navy.

Furthermore, commanders, political organs, and Party and Komsomol organizations are guided in their practical work by the statutes on the military councils and political organs and by the appropriate instructions to the CPSU and Komsomol organizations in the Soviet Army and Navy which have been approved by the Central Committee of the CPSU.

The specific content of political work during the preparation and conduct of an operation is determined also by the nature of the combat situation and the combat tasks stemming from the orders of the formation commander (large unit commander).

59. The principal tasks of political work in a combat situation are:

-- to educate personnel in the spirit of socialist patriotism, utter devotion to their people, the socialist homeland, the Communist Party, to the Soviet government, to the cause of Communism, to the entire commonwealth of socialist countries, in the spirit of friendship of the peoples of the USSR and of proletarian internationalism, of the conscientious fulfilment by each serviceman of his military duty, of the moral principles of the moral code of a builder of communism, and of the high personal responsibility for the defense of his fatherland;

-- to strengthen belief in the righteousness of our cause and of final victory over the enemy; to explain to soldiers the causes, nature, and political goals of the war and the tasks confronting the Armed Forces, the international and internal situation of the USSR, and the superiority of the Soviet social and governmental system over the capitalist system;

-- to inform all personnel with timeliness and thoroughness of the decisions of the Communist Party and Soviet government, and the orders of the Supreme High Command, formation commanders, and commanders, to mobilize soldiers for the successful accomplishment of concrete combat tasks under all conditions, to maintain units and large units in constant combat readiness, to rapidly master new military equipment coming into troop service,

and to study the political and morale qualities of incoming replacements;

-- to inculcate in personnel a burning hatred toward the enemy, a high degree of vigilance, a knowledge of how to preserve military and state secrets, of how to guard their large unit (unit) against penetration by spies and saboteurs, of how to unmask enemy propaganda and provocation, and of how to prevent feelings of panic and unsteadiness when fulfilling combat tasks;

-- to strengthen one-man command as a major principle in the organization of the Soviet Armed Forces, to support the authority of commanders and superiors, to indoctrinate personnel in fidelity to the military oath, in high self-discipline and conscientious discipline, fortitude, courage, and massive heroism; to inculcate unquestioning fulfilment of the orders and instructions of commanders and superiors, readiness to protect them in battle, and also mutual respect between superiors and subordinates; to develop in officers such qualities as constant contact with the personnel, skill in combining a highly exacting attitude with concern for troop rest and the satisfaction of their everyday and cultural needs;

-- to show tireless concern for the firm mastery by officers, generals, and admirals of Marxist-Leninist theory, modern military science, and military-technical knowledge;

-- to develop in command and political personnel high qualities of resoluteness, initiative, independence, and creativeness, the ability to assess a situation rapidly and correctly, adopt bold decisions without vacillating, and put them into practice with persistence;

-- to increase the responsibility of generals, admirals, and officers for the organization of combat actions and for troop control in a complex and fast-changing situation, for the successful accomplishment of the assigned combat tasks; to publicize the best up-to-date experience of commanders in the training and indoctrination of the troops and in troop leadership in battle;

-- to foster in troops the revolutionary traditions of the Communist Party and the Soviet people, the combat traditions of

the Armed Forces, their own branch arm and large unit, and to inculcate in them a spirit of loyalty to the banner of their large unit (unit) and a striving to protect it as the apple of one's eye;

-- to publicize the combat successes and heroic deeds of our troops at the front and the labor achievements of the Soviet people in the rear area, to have concern for the timely commendation and recommendation for decoration of servicemen of units and large units who have distinguished themselves in battle;

-- to sustain in personnel a high offensive spirit, bravery, initiative, and steadfastness, the capacity to bravely endure all dangers, burdens, and privations of a combat situation; to sustain a constant readiness to act with confidence and total exertion of morale and physical efforts under conditions when the enemy uses nuclear weapons and other means of mass destruction, and also to exploit skilfully and rapidly the results of the use of these means by our own forces;

-- to show constant care for the maintenance of continuous cooperation among all staffs and troops participating in the combat actions, for the strengthening of troop solidarity, mutual support, and mutual assistance in battle; to inculcate in servicemen confidence in the power and might of their own weapons, a feeling of responsibility for their maintenance and skilful employment in battle; and to develop in soldiers a striving to constantly improve their combat skills;

-- to carry out specific party political measures aimed at quickly eliminating the aftereffects of the enemy's use of weapons of mass destruction and restoring the combat effectiveness of units and subunits; and to sustain the high morale and fighting spirit and military discipline of the personnel who have found themselves in a zone of contamination;

-- to have daily concern for the uninterrupted providing of troops with all living and combat necessities, especially ammunition, fuel, and rations, for timely medical assistance and the evacuation of the wounded and sick from the battlefield, and to organize burials for the Soviet soldiers who fall in battle for their homeland;

-- to strengthen the combat comradeship of Soviet soldiers with servicemen of the armies of the countries of the socialist camp, to publicize their combat successes; to foster in personnel a spirit of respect for the national characteristics, traditions, and customs of the local population, and a solicitous attitude towards national property and the property of working people;

-- to organize and conduct ideological warfare against the enemy (special propaganda).

60. Political work with the troops must be carried out purposefully and continuously, based on concrete developments in the situation. This is achieved by:

-- assigning tasks with timeliness to commanders and political workers, by efficiently instructing them on the problems of the substance, form, and methods of political work with personnel, and also on the problems of organizing and carrying out special propaganda before combat actions are initiated and while they are being conducted;

-- commanders and political workers having a thorough knowledge of the situation, as well as of the decisions made by the formation commanders and the instructions issued;

-- maintaining continuous communication and a mutual exchange of information between staffs and political organs and by having them work out and implement joint measures aimed at the successful preparation and conduct of operations and battles;

-- showing constant concern for the strengthening of Party and Komsomol organizations and for their high level of activism, by properly placing political workers, communists, and Komsomol members, and ensuring they set a personal example in battle;

-- having strong and constant communication between superiors at all levels and the broad masses of soldiers, by the educational and organization work of these superiors, by the daily personal contact and influence of commanders and political workers with subordinates, and by timely political information from the bottom upwards and from the top downwards.

61. Military councils bear responsibility for the political work carried out in the troops, the morale, political consciousness, and military discipline of the personnel, and for the combat readiness of the troops. The political directorates (political departments) of formations (large units) exercise direct control over party organizations and party political work in the troops and, in the field of party political work, they are the guiding party organs of the Communist Party of the Soviet Union within the Armed Forces of the USSR.

62. Ideological warfare against the enemy is organized and carried out in accordance with the requirements of the "Guide to Political Work Among Enemy Troops and Population Under Combat Conditions". The principal task of this warfare is to undermine the morale of the enemy troops and population, to break their will to resist, and to persuade them to drop out of the war. To do this, it is necessary to:

-- explain the just and liberating nature of the war on the part of the socialist countries and its aggressive nature on the part of the imperialist states, unmask the enemy's ruling circles and military command, show the inevitability of the defeat of the imperialist coalition and the complete victory of the countries of the socialist camp in the war;

-- explain the essence of the just policy of the Soviet Union and other countries of the socialist commonwealth, unmask the lies and slander of imperialist propaganda;

-- conduct propaganda aimed at intensifying the contradictions within the armies of the imperialist states and explain to the armed forces personnel and population of the enemy the way they can get out of the imperialist war.

Measures in the field of ideological warfare against the enemy must be coordinated with the combat tasks, conducted in cooperation with the staffs, and also coordinated with the commands and political organs of the formations (large units) of the socialist countries conducting combined combat actions.

63. The chief of the political directorate (political department) develops the political work plan for the forthcoming combat actions and coordinates it with the appropriate formation

commanders (commanders).

The great pressure on the physical powers and morale of soldiers under the complex conditions of modern warfare requires that political work be conducted continuously and with increasing intensity as the developing situation becomes more difficult and tense.

The specific forms and methods of political work in all the types of actions of the Rocket Forces, Ground Forces, Air Defense (Antimissile Defense) Forces of the Country, Air Forces, and Navy are determined by the plans of the corresponding political organs taking into consideration the nature of the operation and the situation.

64. Explaining to personnel the military-political significance, concept, and times for the conduct of forthcoming combat actions may be done only upon special orders.

65. Political work in the Ground Forces is carried out to support the successful accomplishment of the tasks assigned to them, taking into consideration the conditions, situation, and nature of the operations being conducted.

66. When an offensive operation is being prepared and conducted, the tasks of political work are:

-- to develop a highly aggressive spirit in personnel so that they successfully accomplish the assigned tasks of destroying the enemy within a short period of time;

-- to mobilize soldiers to seize and retain the initiative, attain high rates of advance, and act energetically, boldly, and decisively;

-- to explain to personnel with comprehensiveness, thoroughness, and timeliness the combat tasks and aspects of the situation, and also to inform soldiers of the characteristics of opposing hostile units and large units;

-- to mobilize personnel of missile and aviation units to destroy the enemy in a timely and decisive manner with nuclear strikes, and also to mobilize personnel of tank, motorized rifle,

and airborne units to exploit rapidly and skilfully the results of the nuclear strikes delivered against the enemy for his final defeat and to negotiate zones of demolitions and of radioactive contamination rapidly and without halting;

-- to increase the sense of responsibility of personnel for the effective use and maintenance in continuous readiness for trouble-free operation of combat equipment and weapons, for strict and precise observance of camouflage measures and measures of protection against means of mass destruction, for the maintenance of high vigilance and the protection of military secrets, for the timely destruction of enemy sabotage groups and airborne landing forces, and for the decisive suppression of possible manifestations of cowardice and panic;

-- to mobilize personnel for organized and precise conduct of all command and staff measures to covertly relocate and move troops during regroupings and movement to the axes readied for active offensive actions;

-- to develop among the officer personnel of staffs high skill, creativity, and initiative in their work, to constantly endeavor to find new forms and methods of combat actions, to stand for no manifestations of triteness in the organization and conduct of operations and battles, to achieve organization, precision, and efficiency in the work of control organs, and to strengthen the role of these organs in the preparation and conduct of the operation and in the organization of stable troop control;

-- to maintain among personnel the constant readiness to preempt the enemy and immediately deploy into battle formation and carry out rapid maneuvers in a meeting engagement, as well as the capability of acting with boldness, initiative, and determination to deliver a surprise attack against the enemy and bring about his defeat in a short period of time;

-- to show constant concern for maintaining the uninterrupted cooperation of all staffs and troops participating in the operation, and particularly with missile large units and aviation, with first-echelon troops, between forward detachments and airborne landing forces, between main forces of the first echelon and troops of the second echelon, with various-purpose

reserves, and with the troops of allied countries;

-- to strengthen political influence on the personnel of large units of airborne troops, and explain to them the assigned combat tasks, the procedure and methods of accomplishing them, and also the necessity of carrying out daring and bold actions in the enemy rear when accomplishing the tasks assigned to the landing force;

-- to adopt measures strengthening political work, increasing the Party and Komsomol membership in units operating as part of the forward detachments and airborne landing forces, to mobilize their personnel to accomplish skilfully and resolutely the tasks assigned to them;

-- to organize and carry out political work in border military districts during the period of the partially completed mobilization and deployment of troops and of their regrouping, with the observance of camouflage measures and measures of protection against means of mass destruction, and also when troops earmarked to reinforce the first echelon are making marches or being transported;

-- to provide complete, truthful, and timely information on the situation of forward units and large units and on their morale and fighting condition.

67. Political work with personnel of the reconnaissance organs of formations and large units must aim to discover in a timely manner and fully the enemy's grouping of troops, and especially his means of nuclear attack, control posts, and radar system.

68. When conducting the first operations of the initial period of war, political work has the aim of maintaining among personnel an unconquerable fortitude and tenacity and a capacity to conduct bold mobile actions when repelling the enemy's first strikes and when conducting decisive offensive actions.

69. Political work in a defensive operation has the purpose of:

-- mobilizing personnel to prepare a timely and efficient defense capable of withstanding the massed attacks of the advancing enemy;

-- increasing the combat readiness and combat effectiveness of defending troops, of raising the survivability and stability of the defense, of increasing in every way possible the vigilance of the soldiers and their ability to rapidly and skilfully recognize and destroy enemy reconnaissance-and-sabotage groups;

-- maintaining troop aggressiveness and tenacity when conducting defensive actions under conditions of the massed employment of nuclear weapons by the enemy and when repelling the attack of his superior forces, striving to inflict heavy losses on him, disrupt his offensive, and create within a short period of time conditions to go over to a decisive offensive.

-- mobilizing the personnel of units and subunits equipped with tactical and operational-tactical missiles to deliver timely and accurate strikes against the attacking enemy;

-- maintaining among the personnel of second echelons and various-purpose reserves a constant readiness to conduct decisive actions to restore a defense that has been breached, and also to carry out timely maneuvers with forces and means in order to deliver a counterthrust and counterattack against an enemy breaking into the defense;

-- fostering in officers and staffs a high sense of responsibility for organizing and maintaining continuous troop cooperation and for maintaining firm control over them in battle.

70. Political work within the organs of the tactical and operational rear services, especially the rear services of a first-echelon army and of rocket troops, must focus on uninterruptedly providing troops with all the necessities for living and for combat, and above all, with ammunition, fuel, and rations.

When organizing and conducting political work in the Ground Forces it is necessary to take into account that these, being the largest branch of the Armed Forces, will suffer massive losses from enemy nuclear strikes. Therefore, maintaining high morale

and combat fortitude in the Ground Forces will be extremely important in order to achieve success in operations carried out in the ground theaters of military operations.

Whatever the losses from enemy nuclear strikes, the fortitude and tenacity of the Ground Forces must not waver as they achieve the assigned tasks. Even if only a small composite detachment remains of a division, and only small groups of soldiers remain of a regiment or battalion, they must resolutely and boldly fulfil the assigned tasks, bearing in mind that it is no easier for the enemy and that his remaining forces are no greater. Under these conditions, the fortitude, tenacity, and heroism of the men, their profound conviction of the righteousness of the great cause of Marx and Lenin and their unlimited faith in the all-conquering power of the ideas of the Communist Party will decide everything.

CHAPTER 3

THE PRINCIPLES OF GROUND FORCES OPERATIONS

71. The Ground Forces conduct offensive and defensive operations.

Offensive operations are subdivided into front and army operations. Defensive operations are conducted on an army scale, and in exceptional cases, on a front scale.

A front operation is conducted on one or more operations axes of a theater of military operations either independently or in cooperation with an adjoining front (fronts). An army operation is an integral part of a front operation and is conducted on a single operations axis jointly with other armies or independently. In some cases, on isolated axes, an army may conduct its own operations separately, without forming a part of a front.

72. Present-day operations of the Ground Forces are characterized by the extensive use of nuclear weapons and other means of mass destruction, and also by rapid maneuvering actions of troops.

The skilful use of nuclear weapons and the rapid actions of motorized rifle (armored), tank, and airborne troops, and of troops of other branch arms enable us to inflict a decisive defeat on the enemy and achieve the goals of the operation in a short period of time.

Combat actions of the Ground Forces will be conducted without continuous fronts, on separate axes, at varying depths simultaneously, and will be characterized by great intensity, rapidity of movement, variety in the methods of action employed, quick shifts from one method to another, and drastic changes in the situation.

On the battlefield, troops will operate in dispersed dispositions over a wide front and deliver strikes with adequately powerful groupings on selected axes. The fundamental condition for the achievement of success is to decisively concentrate troop efforts and nuclear weapons strikes on the main

axis.

73. The enemy's use of nuclear weapons and other means of mass destruction may inflict great losses in personnel, military equipment, and materiel.

However, even under these conditions, the remaining combat-effective subunits, units, and large units, or composite detachments that have been formed up, must, whatever the situation, continue to resolutely accomplish their assigned task. When nuclear weapons are used, victory will be obtained by that side which does not tolerate confusion, but which acts resolutely and boldly, and whatever the situation, retains the initiative in its hands.

74. The combat composition of the operational formations (operational-tactical large units) of the Ground Forces and of front aviation depends on their intended use, the tasks to be fulfilled, and the character of the theaters of military operations.

The composition of a front may include: combined-arms and tank armies, an air army, some separate army corps, motorized rifle (armored), tank, airborne, missile, and artillery large units and units, large units and units of air defense troops and special troops and rear services large units, units, and facilities.

The composition of a combined-arms army usually includes several motorized rifle (armored) and tank divisions -- and in certain cases, army corps -- army missile, artillery, and surface-to-air missile large units and units, units of special troops, and rear services units and facilities. Large units and units of the front or of the reserve of the Supreme High Command may be attached to the army.

A tank army usually consists of several tank divisions, army missile and surface-to-air missile large units and units, and other army units and facilities. Depending on the tasks and the situation, by order of the front commander motorized rifle (armored) large units may be attached to a tank army, and so may tank large units and units of the front and of the reserve of the Supreme High Command.

TS # 778264
Copy #___

A front air army usually consists of several large units and separate units of fighter, fighter-bomber and bomber (missile-carrying), reconnaissance, and transport aircraft, and special-purpose units. It also has support and servicing large units, units, and facilities.

An army corps contains several motorized rifle (armored) and tank divisions and corps units. Missile units and large units and units of the front and the reserve of the Supreme High Command may be attached to it.

75. The goals of Ground Forces operations are achieved through the joint efforts of all branch arms and front aviation, as well as of the forces and means of other branches of the Armed Forces cooperating with them operationally and tactically in accomplishing their tasks.

76. Operational-tactical rocket troops are the primary means for the employment of nuclear weapons and are intended to destroy and neutralize the enemy's nuclear attack means, key troop groupings, and rear services installations to the entire depth of his operational disposition. They accomplish their combat tasks by delivering massed, grouped, and single nuclear strikes.

A massed nuclear strike is delivered in the shortest possible time period with that number of nuclear warheads which will ensure destroying one major enemy grouping or several groupings, and other important targets located in a particular area.

A grouped nuclear strike is delivered simultaneously with several nuclear warheads against an important enemy target whose destruction cannot be achieved by a single large-yield warhead, and also when a powerful nuclear warhead cannot be used because of considerations for the safety of one's own troops or because it is not advisable owing to the situation.

A single nuclear strike is delivered against a single target or a group of targets with a single nuclear warhead which ensures that the prescribed level of destruction is inflicted on them.

In addition to nuclear strikes, rocket troops can deliver strikes with missiles having chemical or conventional warheads.

Rocket troops can rapidly shift nuclear strikes against other targets. The maneuver of front and army missile large units is particularly important, as these can deliver strikes against enemy installations on any axis, both to support tasks accomplished by the front and army troops as well as to support adjacent fronts and armies.

Artillery fulfils the tasks of preparatory fire and close support of the actions of tank, motorized rifle (armored), and airborne large units or units.

77. Tank troops, possessing high mobility, great firepower, and great striking power, can most successfully exploit the results of nuclear strikes against the enemy and rapidly penetrate to a great depth into his disposition. They, to a greater degree than other branch arms, are capable of withstanding enemy nuclear strikes and also of negotiating zones of radioactive contamination and areas of severe destruction.

78. Motorized rifle (armored) troops, possessing powerful weapons and diversified combat equipment, including armored means of locomotion with all-terrain capability, can rapidly carry out marches over long distances and maneuver on the battlefield; they can conduct decisive combat actions at high rates of speed, at any season of the year or time of day, and over varied terrain, both on vehicles, and when necessary, on foot.

79. Airborne troops are a high-maneuver means of the Supreme High Command. When landed on enemy territory, they can most effectively exploit the results of nuclear strikes by strategic means in order to rapidly shift military actions deep into the enemy's rear area and to aid in accomplishing the disorganization of his governmental and military control. Airborne troops will also destroy enemy nuclear means and render assistance and support to a guerrilla movement. In individual cases, they will be called upon to cooperate with attacking troops in fulfilling their assigned tasks and in supporting an offensive at high rates of advance and to a great depth.

Airborne troops are capable of conducting combat actions widely separated from attacking ground forces over a period of several days, and under favorable conditions, of accomplishing tasks independently.

80. Air defense troops cover front (army) troops and rear services installations against enemy air strikes. In cooperation with the fighter aviation of the front air army and troops of the Air Defense Forces of the Country operating in the frontline zone, they destroy enemy aircraft and missiles in the air, they produce radio-frequency jamming against air attack means, carry out radar reconnaissance, and warn troops of the threat of air attack, and they also combat enemy airborne landing forces.

81. Front aviation is intended to operate jointly with ground forces in operations conducted by the latter. It accomplishes the tasks of destroying the enemy's nuclear attack means, aircraft, missiles, and other fire means, groupings of his troops, especially the reserves; it safeguards the landing of troops, covers troops against air strikes, and conducts aerial reconnaissance. Since it is a high-maneuver means, front aviation is capable of concentrating its efforts within a short period of time on any axis.

82. Special troops -- engineer, chemical, radiotechnical, communications, motor transport, road, railroad, and others -- are intended to support and assist the ground forces as they fulfil their combat tasks.

83. Nuclear weapons are the principal means of destroying the enemy in operations conducted by ground forces. The use of these weapons brings about conditions favoring the speedy rout of the enemy and the attainment of the goals of the operations within short periods of time.

In ground forces operations, nuclear weapons must be used on the decisive axes, by surprise, and in combination with chemical weapons and conventional means of destruction. The skilful use of nuclear weapons enables us to almost instantaneously destroy, or inflict heavy losses upon, the enemy's main grouping and thereby rapidly change the balance of forces in our favor; it ensures seizing the initiative at the beginning of combat actions and accomplishing the principal tasks of the operation in a short

period of time. This is achieved: by massing them on the decisive axes and against the enemy's major groupings and targets, by delivering surprise preemptive strikes against him which are coordinated by time and place with the use of other means of destruction and also with the actions of tank and motorized rifle (armored) large units, and airborne and amphibious landing forces; by organizing and conducting continuous reconnaissance of the targets of the nuclear strikes; by allocating backup means of employing nuclear weapons in order to destroy the most important targets; and by ensuring the safety of one's own forces and aircraft when nuclear strikes are being delivered.

84. The front commander personally organizes the use of nuclear weapons in an operation. He determines the tasks which must be accomplished with the aid of nuclear weapons during the operation; he establishes the number of nuclear warheads for the combined-arms and tank armies and those allocated as a reserve; he assigns the tasks in which front means will employ nuclear warheads; and he monitors the use of nuclear warheads in the armies.

The commander of a combined-arms (tank) army, or the commander of a corps (division), organizes the use of the nuclear warheads placed at his disposal taking into consideration the situation in the front (army) zone. Army commanders monitor the use of nuclear warheads in the corps (divisions).

When organizing the use of nuclear weapons, the front (army) staff is obliged to prepare in a timely manner all the data needed by the commander in order to make the decision to deliver nuclear strikes; it is obliged to plan the use of nuclear weapons, to organize all types of support, to organize the control of the large units (units) using nuclear weapons, and to monitor the fulfilment of measures for the use of nuclear weapons.

The chief of rocket troops and artillery, and also the commander of the air army, ensure the timely and exact fulfilment of the tasks assigned by the front (army) commander for the delivery of nuclear strikes.

85. In ground forces operations, chemical weapons are used for the purpose of inflicting massive personnel losses on the enemy and hindering his conduct of combat actions and the work of his rear services. They are used by rocket troops, aviation, and artillery in conjunction with other means of destruction, by surprise, massively, and against the most important targets.

86. Bacteriological weapons are primarily strategic weapons and their use is determined by decision of the Supreme High Command.

The primary purpose in using bacteriological weapons in ground forces operations is to inflict massive personnel losses on the enemy and also to hinder his troop combat activities and the work of his rear services. These weapons are employed by rocket troops, aviation, artillery, and by covert methods, in combination with other means of destruction, by surprise, massed, and against the most important targets in the enemy's rear. Most effective results are achieved by using biological warfare agents which lead to the rapid spread of disease.

87. In order to conduct a front (army) operation, the commander decides on the operational disposition of the troops, which consists in establishing a definite grouping of forces and means.

The operational disposition of the troops must conform to the concept of the operation and to the assigned tasks; and it must ensure that the main efforts of the troops are concentrated on fulfilling the most important tasks, that troops have the capability of rapidly exploiting the results of nuclear strikes against the enemy, that troops cooperate closely, that the necessary conditions are met for the maneuvering of nuclear means and troops, and and that troops are protected against enemy weapons of mass destruction.

88. The successful conduct of operations is ensured by: concentration of the main efforts of the troops on the fulfilment of the most important tasks, those on whose accomplishment the success of the combat actions as a whole will depend, timely destruction of the enemy' nuclear attack means and achievement of fire superiority over him; the simultaneous action of nuclear and chemical weapons and simultaneous attacks of troop groupings into

the entire depth of the enemy's disposition and against his most important rear area installations; display of creative initiative in fulfilling the combat tasks; correct selection of the targets against which nuclear strikes are delivered and timely destruction of them; rapid exploitation by large units and operational formations of the results of nuclear strikes against the enemy, employment of extensive maneuver, and conduct of combat actions at high rates of advance; imposing of one's will on the enemy and preempting him in the delivery of nuclear strikes; organization of continuous combat actions by day and by night; precise coordination of the efforts of branch arms and front aviation and the execution of maneuver with nuclear means and the troops; timely buildup of efforts on the main axes; coverage of troops and rear installations against strikes by the enemy's air attack means; continuous conduct of measures to maintain troop combat effectiveness and to comprehensively support operations; and by the exercise of firm and continuous troop control.

89. Concentrating our main efforts to fulfil the most important tasks in an operation is achieved by the massed employment of nuclear, chemical, and conventional types of weapons against the enemy's nuclear attack means, his principal groupings of troops and aircraft, and other major targets; by the maneuver and rapid actions of troops on selected axes so that they speedily reach the areas subjected to nuclear strikes, finish routing the enemy's main grouping, and seize the key areas and objectives. The axes of the offensive of the troops must ensure that their maneuver capabilities are exploited to the utmost and must also exploit breaks and gaps in the enemy's operational disposition and sectors covered by inconsiderable or unstable forces so as to penetrate rapidly into the depths of his disposition.

The axis on which the principal efforts of a front (army, corps) are concentrated is the main axis or axis of the main attack.

90. To successfully conduct operations it is important that the troops skilfully exploit the results of nuclear strikes delivered by strategic and operational-tactical means.

The results of nuclear strikes must be exploited immediately and resolutely by the troops in order to rapidly move forward and achieve the goals of the operation and to deny the enemy the opportunity of pulling himself together or of bringing reserves up to the areas of nuclear strikes and restoring the situation. To do this, it is necessary, immediately following the nuclear strikes, to go over without delay to a rapid offensive with tank and motorized rifle (armored) troops and also to drop (land) airborne forces in the enemy's rear.

91. One of the primary tasks in present-day operations is to combat enemy nuclear attack means.

The destruction and neutralization of enemy nuclear attack means must be carried out immediately as they are discovered and must be conducted continuously throughout the entire duration of an operation by the united efforts and coordinated actions of all forces and means. Reserves of enemy nuclear warheads should be destroyed when they are located in their storage sites and also while they are being transported to assembly and delivery bases in the launching site areas of rocket troops and to airfields; missile means are destroyed in their sites, in concentration and waiting areas, and also on the march; missile-delivery aircraft are destroyed on airfields and in the air.

Along with the destruction of the enemy's nuclear attack means, we must also destroy and neutralize his missile control radiotechnical systems and his aircraft guidance stations (centers).

To destroy the enemy's operational-tactical and tactical nuclear attack means we should use fighter-bomber and bomber (missile-delivery) aircraft first of all as they are the most mobile means, and rocket troops. Furthermore, to accomplish this task we can call upon air defense means, cruise missiles, long-range and rocket artillery, tanks, forward detachments and also reconnaissance groups sent into the enemy's rear, and tactical airborne landing forces.

The fulfilment of this task also is achieved through the actions of attacking troops by quickly routing the opposing first-echelon groupings and reserves of the enemy and rapidly moving deep into the areas where his nuclear attack means are situated.

The successful accomplishment of the task of destroying enemy nuclear weapons and his means of employing them is achieved: by discovering them with timeliness and accurately determining the location of the objectives (targets); by rapidly making a decision to destroy the enemy nuclear attack means and promptly assigning tasks to the troops; by correctly choosing the moment to strike and allocating targets among the rocket troops, aircraft, and artillery; by having missile means, aircraft, and artillery, and especially the subunits on alert, in constant readiness to immediately deliver a strike; and also by organizing precise cooperation and control of the forces and means allocated to deliver the strikes.

92. The massed use of nuclear, chemical, and bacteriological weapons by ~~both sides~~ will give rise to the formation of numerous zones and areas of contamination and destruction which troops will be obliged to bypass, negotiate, fight in, or wait for a drop of the high levels of radiation and chemical contamination.

When conducting an operation (battle) in contaminated areas, troop actions must be resolute, high-maneuver, and rapid, since one can receive considerable doses of radioactive irradiation (contamination) during an extended stay on terrain having even low levels of radiation (contamination).

Negotiating zones of radioactive and chemical contamination must be so organized that troops receive minimum doses of irradiation and contamination and are capable of conducting combat actions upon leaving the zones of contamination.

93. The methods of negotiating zones of contamination are determined according to the operational and meteorological situation, the level of radiation and concentration of toxic substances, the degree and nature of destruction on the routes (axes) of movement, the development of obstructions and centers of fires, the persistence of toxic substances, the character of

the terrain, and also the actions of the enemy in the contaminated zone and beyond its confines.

Troops negotiate zones of radioactive contamination by their own means on T/E motor transport and combat vehicles or by using air transport. In so doing, the negotiation of the zones of contamination may be carried out: from the march without waiting for a drop in the level of radiation; bypassing sectors (areas) with high levels of radiation; after the level of radiation has dropped; or by a combination of these methods.

When negotiating zones of radioactive contamination from the march, tank units should be sent at the heads of the columns, personnel on armored personnel carriers (infantry combat vehicles) should follow them and the remaining troops after them. Zones of contamination are negotiated on the routes and axes with the lowest levels of radiation. The troops must move at heightened speeds with increased distances between vehicles and subunits and use their individual means of protection.

Bypassing zones of radioactive contamination is carried out in those cases when the radiation dose which personnel may receive exceeds the maximum tolerable dose. When it is impossible to bypass, or when bypassing may lead to failure to fulfil the assigned task, such a zone must be crossed speedily on tanks or by airlifting troops.

In those cases when it is necessary to wait for a drop in high levels of radiation, troops in front of the contaminated zone must be dispersed and reliably covered against air strikes.

After the troops have left the zone of radioactive contamination they continue to fulfil their combat task and when it is necessary, carry out the decontamination of personnel and combat equipment. In case the situation does not allow this, then only those units and large units exposed to the highest levels of radioactivity undergo immediate decontamination of personnel and equipment. When they do this, they must be replaced by reserves.

CHAPTER 4

OFFENSIVE OPERATIONS

94. Offensive operations are the principal type of operation of the Ground Forces.

The goals of front (army) offensive operations are: to rout the opposing groupings and deep reserves of the enemy and to seize his vitally important economic and political centers and areas of his territory both in cooperation with adjacent fronts (armies) and operational formations (large units) of other branches of the Armed Forces as well as independently.

The attainment of these goals is ensured by: the strikes of rocket troops and aviation using nuclear and chemical weapons in conjunction with conventional means of destruction against the entire depth of the enemy's operational disposition and his rear services installations; destruction of his nuclear weapons; immediate exploitation by troops of the results of nuclear strikes for the final defeat of the opposing enemy; rapid development of the offensive to a great depth; and continuous buildup of the force of the attacks.

95. Offensive operations in the initial period of a war, depending on the results of nuclear strikes, the level of destruction inflicted on the opposing enemy, and the nature of his combat actions, may most often begin under conditions of the negotiation of an enemy defense, when he will endeavor to repel or delay the offensive of our forces by defensive actions. In certain cases, an operation may begin under conditions of both sides simultaneously going over to the offensive with the conduct of a meeting engagement.

On separate axes armies may go over to the offensive after repelling an enemy offensive.

All of these conditions, or various combinations of them, may take place at the same time in the same offensive operation of a front, but on different axes.

96. The use of nuclear weapons and the growing striking power and mobility of troops make it possible to sharply expand

the scope of offensive operations.

Depending on the available forces and means, the developing situation, and on the conditions of the theater of military operations, the width of the offensive zone at the beginning of an operation may amount to the following: for a front made up of four to six armies -- from 400 to 500 kilometers or more, for a combined-arms army made up of five to six divisions -- up to 100 kilometers or more, and for an army corps made up of three divisions -- up to 50 kilometers or more. During an operation the width of the offensive zone may change.

The depth of a front offensive operation depends on the situation, the goal of the operation, the available forces and means, and on the number and yield of the allocated nuclear warheads. It is determined by the arrival of the troops in those areas whose capture achieves the goal of the operation, and it may amount to 1,000 kilometers or more, that is, it can practically run to the entire depth of the theater of military operations. Under these conditions, a combined-arms army can conduct an operation to a depth of up to 400 to 500 kilometers or more, and in a number of cases to the entire depth of the front operation. As a rule, a tank army will be given a task to the entire depth of the front offensive operation. An army corps may be given a task to the same approximate depth as a combined-arms army.

In an operation the troops may attain rates of advance of up to 100 kilometers per day. Achieving these rates is ensured by:

-- skilfully using nuclear weapons and promptly exploiting the results of nuclear strikes; continuously combating the enemy's nuclear attack means;

-- rapidly restoring the combat effectiveness of large units and units subjected to nuclear strikes;

-- acting decisively and energetically and by imposing our will on the enemy;

-- skilfully exploiting gaps and breaches in the enemy's operational disposition in order to deliver strikes against the flanks and rear of his groupings;

-- conducting a rapid offensive day and night without involving first-echelon large units in drawn-out combat with stubbornly resisting enemy groupings;

-- building up forces on the decisive axis continuously and promptly through the maneuver of troops and the commitment of second echelons and reserves;

-- landing airborne landing forces, and -- and on a coastal axis -- amphibious landing forces;

-- reliably safeguarding troops against enemy air strikes;

-- having precise cooperation of forces and means; and having the troops know how to move with maximum speed on roads and without roads;

-- rapidly crossing zones (belts) of radioactive contamination and areas of destruction as well as water obstacles; and

-- firmly and continuously controlling troops, conducting active reconnaissance, and comprehensively supporting the operation.

97. To achieve the goal of an operation, immediate and subsequent tasks usually are specified for a front (army). The depth and substance of these tasks may vary.

Usually the substance of the immediate task may be to destroy the enemy's nuclear attack means, to rout his main grouping, to seize important areas or objectives in the depth of the disposition of the enemy army group, and also to create conditions favoring the development of a subsequent offensive at high rates of advance.

The substance of the subsequent task of a front may be to destroy newly detected nuclear attack means of the enemy, to complete the rout of deep reserves, and to seize strategic areas and objectives whose capture achieves the goal of the operation.

The immediate task of a combined-arms army can include routing opposing groupings of his troops and seizing key

objectives or areas deep in the disposition of an army of the enemy's first echelon. The substance of the army's subsequent task can be to rout the enemy's forces, which ensures fulfilment of the immediate task of the front. The depth of the tasks of a combined-arms army can coincide in a number of cases with the depth of the tasks of the front.

The immediate task of a tank army is to destroy the enemy's nuclear attack means, to rout his operational reserves, to seize important areas and objectives on the main axis of the offensive of front forces and ensure the rapid carry-over of their efforts to a great depth. This task usually coincides with the immediate task of the front.

The subsequent task of a tank army may coincide with the subsequent task of the front.

The immediate and subsequent tasks of an army corps may in depth be the same as the tasks of a combined-arms army.

98. The conduct of offensive operations must be based on the surprise delivery of nuclear strikes; resolute exploitation of the results of the use of nuclear weapons, of gaps in the operational disposition of the enemy troops, and of breaches created by our nuclear strikes; and a rapid offensive to a great depth reaching the flanks and rear of the enemy groupings.

The principal method of combat actions in an offensive operation will be to deliver nuclear strikes and to have troops advance rapidly on several of the shortest axes to the final objective of the operation. Other methods of conducting an offensive operation can also take place: delivering nuclear strikes and having groupings of troops attack on converging axes, encircling and destroying enemy groupings, cutting off the enemy's lines of retreat and destroying him, breaking through into the rear and striking the enemy grouping from the rear, and also combining various methods.

Under conditions when the defending enemy grouping is dispersed, and his major reserves are situated in the depth, it is advantageous to deliver a number of deep, swift attacks on several axes with a rapid carry-over of the main efforts of the troops to the operational depth. It is expedient to deliver

attacks on two converging axes when the enemy's main grouping is in the immediate operational depth and does not possess adequate reserves in the depth of the defense, or when the trace of the front line provides conditions favoring the encirclement of the enemy. Encircling the enemy grouping must not decrease the overall rates of advance.

99. A front and army can attack on several axes but an army corps attacks on one or two axes. One of these axes is the axis of the main attack.

The axis of the main attack must ensure: the most expedient use of nuclear weapons and the exploitation by attacking forces of the results of the nuclear strikes in order to rapidly rout the main enemy grouping; the swift advance of the offensive grouping of troops to a great depth and their rapid breakthrough to the area subjected to a nuclear strike in order to complete the rout of the enemy or to seize important areas and objectives. When tank and motorized rifle (armored) large units are on the offensive it is necessary, first of all, to exploit gaps in the enemy's operational disposition and to also exploit sectors covered by inconsiderable or unstable forces. It is important to select those axes for a troop offensive which will ensure the maximum utilization of their maneuver capabilities.

The axis of the main attack is set to the depth of the immediate task, and sometimes to the entire depth of the operation. During an operation, the axis of the main attack may be changed depending on the concretely developing situation.

On the axis of the main attack we establish and constantly maintain superiority in forces and means, especially in nuclear weapons. This is achieved by: concentrating the principal efforts of operational-tactical rocket troops and aviation on the destruction of the enemy's main groupings, establishing an attack grouping made up primarily of tank troops, and intensifying troop efforts through the conduct of extensive maneuver by forces and means during the operation.

100. A key factor in the successful conduct of an offensive operation is the timely establishment of a troop grouping through a suitable decision by the commander.

The grouping established for the offensive must ensure: constant readiness of troops for aggressive combat actions, and first of all, for the delivery of nuclear strikes against the enemy, rapid deployment, and going over to the offensive; the most effective use of nuclear weapons against the most important enemy targets, and also of chemical and conventional means of destruction; the speedy and skilful exploitation by troops of the results of the use of weapons of mass destruction for the final defeat of the main enemy grouping and rapid penetration into the depth; the element of surprise in offensive actions and the continuous intensification of troop efforts on the decisive axes; the capability of maneuvering forces and means along the front and from the depth and also of conducting high-maneuver actions during the entire operation. Furthermore, troop groupings must be established with regard for the possible nature of enemy actions and the best exploitation of the terrain so that forces and means may carry out extensive maneuver.

Upon completing an offensive operation it is necessary in a timely manner to establish front and army troop groupings in order to develop the offensive and carry out subsequent operations without stopping. To do this it is necessary to organize beforehand the regrouping of formations and large units to the necessary axes and to accumulate the necessary reserves of materiel.

101. The operational disposition of front troops frequently includes: first-echelon tank and combined-arms armies, a combined-arms reserve or a second echelon, front rocket troops, front aviation and air defense troops, an airborne landing force (and when attacking on a coastal axis -- troops intended for actions as an amphibious landing force), and reserves of special troops.

The operational disposition of tank and combined-arms armies may include: first-echelon tank and motorized rifle (armored) divisions, second-echelon tank and motorized rifle (armored) divisions or a combined-arms reserve, rocket troops, air defense troops, and reserves of special troops.

The battle formation of an army corps includes first-echelon large units, a second echelon or combined-arms reserve, and reserves of special troops.

102. A first-echelon combined-arms army is intended to rout the enemy's opposing grouping and destroy his nuclear means within its zone, to rapidly develop the offensive to the depth of the immediate task of the front -- and in some cases, to that of the subsequent task of the front -- to seize important areas (objectives), and to consolidate the success achieved.

A first-echelon tank army usually is employed on the axis of the main attack of the front in order to speedily develop the offensive to a great depth, right up to the final goal of the front operation, to destroy the enemy's nuclear means, to rout his operational reserves, and to seize the most important areas and objectives in the depth, especially in areas subjected to strikes of the Strategic Rocket Forces.

Combined-arms and tank armies fulfil their tasks taking into account the tasks to be accomplished by the rocket troops subordinate to the front and in cooperation with the air army, adjacent combined-arms armies and tank armies, and also with airborne landing forces.

Combined-arms and tank armies of a front's first echelon, depending on their role and place in an operation, and also on the availability of forces and means in the front, will receive a specific number of nuclear warheads and can be reinforced by large units and units of rocket troops, artillery, air defense troops, and units of engineer and chemical troops.

103. A front (army) second echelon is intended to develop the offensive on the main axis and to deliver attacks on new axes. Individual large units and units of the second echelon may be called upon for the final defeat of enemy groupings left over on the flanks and rear of the advancing first-echelon forces, to replace first-echelon large units that have sustained heavy losses, and to fulfil other tasks.

A front (army) combined-arms reserve is intended to intensify the efforts of first-echelon troops, to replace first-echelon large units that have sustained heavy losses from enemy nuclear strikes, to consolidate areas and objectives that have been captured, to destroy enemy groupings and airborne landing forces that have been cut off, and to accomplish other tasks that arise suddenly during an operation.

104. Front missile large units and units are used in an offensive operation to hit nuclear attack means, tactical aviation on airfields, nuclear warhead depots located in the operational depth, operational reserves in concentration areas when they are moving forward to the front line and when they are on the lines of deployment, control posts, important radiotechnical centers, and rear services and transportation installations.

Army missile large units and units are intended to destroy nuclear attack means and nuclear warhead depots, to hit the immediate operational and tactical reserves, especially on their lines of deployment for counterattacks, and to neutralize and destroy centers of enemy resistance on the axes of the offensive.

Incidental to accomplishing the cited tasks, front and army missile large units and units can create zones of radioactive contamination in the enemy's operational rear for the purpose of interdicting the approach of his reserves.

Relocation of army and front missile units and large units during an operation is carried out, as a rule, by battalion. The relocating procedure is determined in accordance with the possible tasks, the availability of missiles, and other conditions of the situation. In all cases, the relocation is carried out taking into account that no less than half of the available units (subunits) of the army and front missile large units are to be in constant readiness to deliver strikes. In the most critical periods of an offensive, all or most of the missile large units and units must be ready to deliver strikes.

105. In an offensive operation artillery destroys (neutralizes) enemy tactical nuclear attack means, personnel, artillery and mortars, infantry antitank and fire means, combat equipment, primarily tanks and armored vehicles, radiotechnical means, and it also disrupts troop control. As a rule, it is used according to the decision of the army commander or the large unit commander.

When there is an organized enemy defense on separate axes, preparatory fire is planned and delivered in which artillery accomplishes its tasks primarily by the method of fire strikes. When an organized defense is being overcome, artillery provides

support to the attacking troops by using the method of successive concentration of fire.

To combat tanks, all artillery, antitank missiles, and tanks are called upon. To repel massed tank attacks it is particularly important to deploy artillery units with timeliness on the axes of action of enemy tanks.

106. In a front offensive operation the air army wages combat against the enemy's means of nuclear attack and reserves, destroys his aircraft, covers troops and rear services installations against air strikes, supports the landing and combat actions of airborne (amphibious) landing forces, and conducts reconnaissance into the entire depth of a front operation.

Large units and units of fighter-bomber and bomber (missile-carrying) aviation are brought in to accomplish the tasks of supporting the attacking troops. Fighter-bomber aircraft, operating on call and by the method of independent search, destroy missiles and atomic artillery in their firing positions and while on the move; they destroy enemy aircraft on airfields, reserves, control posts, and radiotechnical means. Bomber (missile-carrying) aircraft are used, first of all, to destroy nuclear attack means, operational reserves, and aircraft situated on airfields beyond the range of the fighter-bombers.

Fighter aviation provides front troops and rear services installations with coverage against air strikes in cooperation with front air defense troops and the frontline formation (large unit) of the Air Defense (Antimissile Defense) Forces of the Country using the method of airfield alert and airborne alert. At the same time, fighter aircraft support the combat actions of other types of aviation and they combat the enemy's airlifts in the frontline zone. In individual cases fighter aviation may be allocated to operate against ground targets.

Aerial reconnaissance is conducted by reconnaissance aviation units (subunits) and combat aviation subunits throughout the offensive zone of front troops, with principal efforts being concentrated on detecting the enemy's nuclear attack means and main troop groupings.

The airfield basing of front aviation is determined with due regard for the establishment of conditions advantageous for it to accomplish its combat tasks and safeguard its aircraft and crews against enemy nuclear strikes. The rebasing of the air army's large units and units during an operation is organized so as to ensure continuous cooperation with front troops, intercept of air targets on the distant approaches to the installations being covered, and delivery of strikes against enemy targets located in the rear area. In doing so, fighters and fighter-bombers usually are rebased to airfields seized by front troops or to newly prepared dirt airfields, and bombers and reconnaissance aircraft are rebased to the fighter and fighter-bomber airfields that have been released.

107. In an offensive operation airborne troops can be used to seize and hold: important areas (lines) for the purpose of rapidly exploiting the results of nuclear strikes against the enemy's installations in the operational depth and also for the purpose of isolating his groupings that are operating at the front from troops approaching from the interior; aviation and missile bases, airfields and missile sites, and nuclear warhead depots; beachheads on major water obstacles, mountain passes and defiles for the purpose of ensuring that they can be quickly negotiated by attacking forces; and coastal sectors in the landing area of an amphibious landing force, and also important lines on the approach routes of enemy reserves to the landing area. Airborne troops can also be employed to destroy control posts, communications centers, radiotechnical means, and other enemy installations for the purpose of disrupting troop control and the work of the rear services.

In an offensive operation we must extensively use tactical landing forces made up of subunits and units of motorized rifle (armored) troops to be airlifted to the enemy rear in helicopters.

108. Air defense forces in an offensive operation safeguard the main troop groupings and other important installations in the front (army) zone against enemy air and missile strikes, they reconnoiter the air enemy and warn troops against them, destroy manned and unmanned enemy aerial reconnaissance means, and also engage in combat against airborne landing forces in the air.

The front air defense is formed on the basis of area and point cover of troops and installations. Area-type air defense consists in a system, organized according to a unified plan, of the combat actions of surface-to-air missile large units and units whose grouping must permit a front's operational troop disposition and rear services installations to be covered simultaneously and reliably against enemy air strikes by massed fire on a broad front and to a great depth. This defense is established taking into account the altitude and distance ranges of surface-to-air missiles and it is reinforced by fighter aviation and radioelectronic countermeasures units.

The grouping of front air defense forces and means is established in conformity with the operational disposition of the troops, their tasks in the operation, and with due regard for the tasks of the Air Defense (Antimissile Defense) Forces of the Country. Groupings of troops, forces, and means on the decisive offensive axes and areas of the location of major rear services installations are covered more reliably.

Reconnaissance of the air enemy is conducted by the radiotechnical units of the front (army) air defense.

Warning troops about the air enemy is organized on a front (army) scale and implemented centrally by the front (army) air defense command posts and in a decentralized manner by the command posts of air defense radiotechnical units and the control posts of radar companies.

When organizing the cooperation of front air defense troops with troops of the Air Defense (Antimissile Defense) Forces of the Country and the air defense troops of adjacent fronts, the following are defined: the boundaries of responsibility for air defense and the zones of mutual transfer of air targets; the procedure for mutual warning about the air enemy; the strength of the fighter aviation forces to be allocated for actions in the zone of adjacent forces, with instructions on the procedure and methods of requesting and controlling these forces; the landing airfields of the fighters operating at their full flight range and the organization of their materiel-technical support; and the overflight procedures for one's own aircraft in the operating zones of surface-to-air missiles and the procedure ensuring the safety of one's own aircraft. Furthermore, we also define the

measures to ensure intercommunication between the air defense system of the front and the system of Air Defense (Antimissile Defense) Forces of the Country during the offensive operation, the procedure for transferring objects being covered to the Air Defense (Antimissile Defense) Forces of the Country, and also other matters regulating and refining the joint actions of the forces and means of cooperating fronts and the frontline formation (large unit) of Air Defense (Antimissile Defense) Forces of the Country or, on a coastal axis -- the actions of the fleet.

Preparing offensive operations

109. Preparing the offensive operation of a front or army (the combat actions of an army corps) comprises a system of measures carried out by the command, staffs, party political organs, troops, and rear services organs to organize, plan, and comprehensively support the operation (battle).

The most important measures in preparing offensive operations are: making a decision and working out an operation (battle) plan; preparing forces and means to deliver nuclear strikes; maintaining troops in constant combat readiness to immediately go over to the offensive; organizing and conducting reconnaissance of the enemy; assigning tasks to the troops and preparing them for combat actions; preparing the area of combat actions from the engineer standpoint, and particularly in respect to airfields and roads; and establishing control posts and a communications system, organizing the rear services, accumulating and echeloning reserves of materiel and sheltering them. All plans and preparatory measures must be constantly refined and improved taking into account new data on the situation.

Measures for the preparation of an offensive operation must in all cases be carried out secretly and in the shortest possible time.

110. Preparing an offensive operation in a front usually begins the moment directives or instructions of the Supreme High Command are received, and in an army, when directives or instructions of the front commander are received. Having ascertained the task and assessed the situation, the front commander or army (corps) commander outlines the concept of the

operation (battle) which is based on a determination of the enemy's main grouping, the methods of defeating it, the axis of the main attack and other attacks, and the operational disposition of the troops. In conformity with the concept of the operation (battle), the front commander or army (corps) commander defines: the tasks, targets, and procedures for the use of nuclear weapons; the tasks of rocket troops, combined-arms armies and tank armies (army corps, divisions), front aviation, and airborne troops, and the procedure for cooperation among them; the tasks of air defense troops and various reserves; and the organization of control.

111. The combat tasks of front and army (corps) troops are set forth by an operational directive or combat order, and in a number of cases by combat instructions.

An operational directive (combat order) specifies:

-- the conclusions from the assessment of the situation and enemy forces;

-- the goal and concept of the operation (battle);

-- the tasks of adjacent forces and the demarcation lines between them;

-- the tasks of armies (corps, divisions) and the demarcation lines between them;

-- the tasks to be fulfilled by front (army) rocket troops;

-- the tasks of the air army (supporting aviation);

-- the tasks of airborne (amphibious) landing forces;

-- the tasks of air defense, engineer, and chemical troops;

-- the composition and tasks of the reserves;

-- the readiness times for troops;

-- special instructions;

-- control -- the location and time of deploying control posts, their relocation axes, and the deputy commanders.

112. When tasks are assigned to a first-echelon combined-arms or tank army (army corps), the following are specified: the combat strength and reinforcement means, the axis of the main attack, the immediate and subsequent tasks; the number of nuclear and other warheads allocated; the enemy targets in the army (corps) zone to be hit with nuclear weapons according to plans of the Supreme High Command and the front; the tasks of adjacent armies and the cooperation procedures and the demarcation lines between them; and the locations of the command posts.

A first-echelon division is assigned an immediate task, an axis of subsequent offensive, and a task of the day. Furthermore, the division commander is briefed on the tasks for the following days of the offensive and on the employment of nuclear weapons on the division's axis of offensive by front and army means.

A second-echelon army (corps, second-echelon divisions) are assigned areas to take up in the departure position for the offensive, movement and deployment procedures, and possible tasks upon commitment to battle. During the operation their tasks are refined or changed depending upon the situation that has developed by the time of commitment to battle.

113. Front (army) rocket troops are given the following when tasks are assigned to them: the targets to hit; the number of nuclear and chemical warheads to be expended against each target; the yield of the warheads (the formulas of the toxic agents); and the type of nuclear bursts and time to be ready for the delivery of strikes. The preparation times of missiles and nuclear warheads, the procedure for delivering them to the troops, and the measures to maintain rocket troops in constant readiness to deliver nuclear strikes are established, and so are the procedures for the cooperation of rocket troops with the troops on the offensive, with the air army, and with the front (army) air defense troops. Furthermore, we indicate the procedures for deploying rocket troops at the beginning of the operation and for relocating them during the operation, and we define the engineer support measures and security measures for

rocket troops.

The strength of the on-alert missile subunits to destroy nuclear attack means and accomplish other tasks which suddenly arise is specified.

114. A front air army is told the tasks it is to concentrate its main efforts on accomplishing, the nuclear and chemical warheads to be allocated to it and the times they are to be received, and the tasks and flight resources for delivering a nuclear strike against the enemy, repelling his strikes, and supporting troops while the immediate and subsequent tasks of a front are being accomplished. Furthermore, it is given the tasks of aerial reconnaissance, the tasks of combating enemy nuclear and chemical attack means and aviation, the procedure for coverage and support of troops on the offensive, the procedure to secure the landing of airborne landing forces and to support them, and also the procedure for cooperating with rocket troops, surface-to-air missile units, combined-arms and tank armies, and adjacent formations (large units) of the Air Forces and Air Defense (Antimissile Defense) Forces of the Country.

115. Airborne landing forces are given the area, time periods, and means of landing; the combat tasks in the enemy rear; the procedure for the delivery by the front of nuclear strikes against targets in the landing zone and in support of the combat actions of the airborne landing forces; the cooperation with front aviation and also with the forces on whose axis of offensive the airborne landing forces will be dropped; the departure areas for the landing operation, the time they are to be occupied and the time to be ready to make the landing; and the organization of control.

116. Front (army) air defense troops are assigned: the troop groupings and rear services intallations and areas which must be covered; the procedure for repelling enemy air and missile attacks and covering the deployment of the troops; and the procedure for cooperation of front air defense forces and means with the fighter aviation of the air army and with formations (large units) of the Air Defense (Antimissile Defense) Forces of the Country. Further specified are the procedure and deadlines for deploying air defense troops by the beginning of the operation, and so is their maneuver during the operation.

117. The combined-arms reserve is assigned the area to take up prior to the beginning of the operation, the procedure and axes of relocation during the operation, and the tentative tasks which it must be ready to accomplish.

Special reserves are assigned tasks taking their purpose into account.

During an offensive operation, the tasks of the reserves are refined or new ones may be assigned.

118. The decision of the formation commander (commander) is the basis for the planning of an operation (combat actions of a corps). A front (army) offensive operation (combat actions of a corps) is planned according to tasks; in doing so, troop actions to the depth of the immediate task are planned in greater detail. The accomplishment of an army's or army corps' immediate task can also be planned according to the days of the operation (battle) or according to the objectives (areas) which must be seized by a specified time in the course of the operation (battle).

The operation (battle) plan usually specifies: the enemy's grouping of forces and means and the possible nature of his actions; the goal of the operation, the immediate and subsequent tasks of the front and army (corps), the depth of the tasks, the time periods for their accomplishment, and the rates of advance; the axis of the main attack and other attacks; the targets to be hit with nuclear weapons at the beginning and in the course of the operation (battle) by front rocket troops and aviation as well as by the Strategic Rocket Forces and Long Range Aviation (if these deliver strikes in the offensive zone); the tasks using chemical weapons, the procedure to combat enemy nuclear attack means, and the operational disposition (combat formation) of the troops; the tasks of the formation and large units and the time periods for their accomplishment, and also the tasks of the adjacent forces; the demarcation lines between formations and large units; the zones and routes of forward movement of the formations and large units on the axis of offensive and the procedure for moving forward; the landing areas and the landing (drop) times of the airborne landing forces; and the location of control posts at the beginning of the operation (battle) and during the offensive.

The operation (battle) plan also specifies the combat strength of the front or army (corps) troops and the allocation of reinforcement means; the availability, delivery times, and allocation of nuclear warheads by tasks and armies (corps, divisions); the allocation of flight resources by tasks and days; the balance of forces and means; and the availability and allocation of materiel.

The operation (battle) plan is developed by the staff of the front or army (corps) with the involvement of the staffs of the rocket troops and artillery, the air army, and the rear, and also the chiefs of the branch arms, special troops, and services. The plan is primarily worked out on a map, to which legends and calculations are appended.

The staffs of the rocket troops and artillery and of the air army, and also the chiefs of the branch arms, special troops, and services develop more detailed plans on the combat employment (combat actions) of the troops and services subordinate to them, and the rear staff develops the rear services support plan; these plans are integral parts of the overall operation (battle) plan.

Concerning the use of nuclear weapons, in the plans for the combat employment of the rocket troops and artillery and the combat actions of the air army the following are specified: the specific measures to prepare nuclear strikes; the main and alternate targets against which nuclear strikes are to be delivered; the number and yield of the nuclear warheads against each target; the type of nuclear bursts; the methods of delivering the nuclear strikes (massed, grouped, or single); when, by whom, and upon whose order are the strikes delivered; the procedure for assembling, preparing, and delivering nuclear warheads to the launching sites and airfields; and the measures for ensuring the safety of one's own troops.

The operation (battle) plan is approved by the front or army commander (corps commander).

119. The participation of a great number of formations, large units, and separate units of different branch arms and branches of the Armed Forces in the operation requires precise organization of their actions. To do this, the cooperation of all forces and means participating in the operation is organized.

The overriding problem of cooperation is to coordinate the procedure and methods for using nuclear weapons and the actions of troops on the offensive.

The cooperation of front or army (corps) forces and means in an offensive is organized by tasks, axes, objectives, and methods of action, and by time to the entire depth of the operation (battle) primarily to fulfil the main tasks and to support those troop groupings which accomplish these tasks. It is organized in greatest detail betweeen the forces and means participating in the delivery of a nuclear strike and for the period the troops are fulfilling the immediate task.

120. When an offensive operation is being prepared under conditions of immediate contact with the enemy, a departure area for the offensive may be prepared. The preparation of a departure area for the offensive includes the preparation of waiting areas and positions for missile large units and units, and areas for the positioning of troops, airfields, shelters, control posts, various depots, and bases, preparation of routes for the forward movement of troops, and also the establishment of a communications system. Preparing a departure area is carried out secretly, strictly adhering to camouflage measures.

The degree to which the work of preparing the departure area for an offensive is accomplished will depend on the available time and the situation.

121. The successful accomplishment of tasks in offensive operations depends upon their comprehensive support.

Support for offensive operations has the aim of creating conditions favoring the surprise and effective use of nuclear weapons by front (army) troops, the rapid offensive of these troops immediately following the nuclear strikes, the maintenance of the combat readiness and combat effectiveness of the troops, and it also has the aim of hampering the enemy's use of his forces and means, particularly his means of mass destruction.

122. Reconnaissance is planned to the entire depth of an operation according to tasks of the troops; in doing so, it is planned in greatest detail for the time of preparation of the operation and fulfilment of the immediate task by the front

(army).

To conduct reconnaissance, we use agent, radio, radiotechnical, and aerial reconnaissance as well as field reconnaissance and partisan actions.

Agent reconnaissance is carried out by front forces and means to the entire depth of the offensive operation.

Aerial reconnaissance is organized and conducted in support of all branch arms, and primarily in support of the rocket troops. During an offensive operation it must provide timely data on the enemy to the combined-arms armies and especially to a tank army operating separately from the remaining front forces.

When planning aerial reconnaissance, the front staff specifies: the main axes of reconnaissance; the key areas and targets requiring systematic surveillance; and the areas (sectors) of vertical and oblique photography.

Radio reconnaissance is carried out by intercepting information, messages, and conversations the enemy transmits on radio and radio-relay lines of communications and by direction finding of the transmitting radio means of the enemy.

Radiotechnical reconnaissance is conducted for the purpose of determining the composition, tactical-technical characteristics, and combat employment methods of the enemy's radiotechnical air defense means and of his means of controlling missile weapons, troops, and aircraft. All front (army) radiotechnical reconnaissance means must be deployed ahead of time and they must conduct continuous reconnaissance. In doing so, they are echeloned in depth so that as the situation changes, the continuity of reconnaissance is not broken. During an offensive operation, radio and radiotechnical reconnaissance means are relocated by echelon.

Radio and radiotechnical reconnaissance is conducted by front (army) OSNAZ and SPETSNAZ radio and radiotechnical units and also by the radio and radiotechnical reconnaissance subunits of the large units (units). Aerial radiotechnical reconnaissance is carried out by special reconnaissance aircraft of the air army.

Field reconnaissance is organized by large unit and unit commanders. Its data are used by front and army staffs.

Reconnaissance of nuclear strike targets is organized and conducted to find out their characteristics, dimensions, principal components, and coordinates. It also determines the resistance of the entire target and of its separate components to the effects of a nuclear burst, and the components of the target whose destruction will ensure the accomplishment of the task of putting the target as a whole out of action. When it is necessary to confirm the presence of a reconnoitered target in its former area, final reconaissance may be carried out.

123. The protection of troops and of rear services installations against weapons of mass destruction is organized for the purpose of maintaining the constant readiness of troops to go over to the offensive and to conduct combat actions at high rates of advance under conditions of enemy use of nuclear, chemical, and bacteriological weapons.

The principal measures to protect troops against weapons of mass destruction while preparing an offensive operation are: to disperse the troops; to prepare and use shelters in the disposition areas and in the departure area; to periodically change troop disposition areas and camouflage them; to continuously conduct radiation, chemical, and bacteriological reconnaissance of the concentration areas and departure areas, and of the routes for the regrouping and forward movement of the troops; to specify troop operating procedures in contaminated zones; to establish reserves of protective means; and to prepare forces and means to rapidly eliminate the aftereffects of an enemy nuclear, chemical, or bacteriological attack.

Front and army commanders (large unit commanders) must always know the radiation and chemical situation and take it into consideration in their decisions, instructions, and actions. To do this, and based on radiation and chemical reconnaissance data, staffs continuously study and forecast the radiation and chemical situation in the troop disposition areas and in the areas of forthcoming troop actions.

In order to protect themselves against weapons of mass destruction, troops should: exploit the protective

characteristics of the terrain and combat equipment; continuously conduct radiation, chemical, and bacteriological reconnaissance on the main axes of the offensive, in their siting areas, at control posts, and on the forward movement routes of second echelons and reserves; rapidly negotiate or bypass contaminated zones and eliminate the aftereffects of enemy nuclear, chemical, and bacteriological attacks without decreasing the rates of advance; and promptly replace reserves of protective equipment.

While preparing an offensive and during its conduct, we must avoid having the troops disposed and positioned in bunches, having them located for an extended time in the same areas, and moving them through major industrial centers, junction stations, and other installations against which the enemy may deliver nuclear strikes.

124. Engineer support is organized for the purpose of creating the essential conditions for a troop offensive at high rates of advance and in order to protect the troops against weapons of mass destruction. The primary tasks of engineer support are: to prepare routes for troops to advance and maneuver; to support the assault crossing of water obstacles from the march; to prepare siting areas for rocket troops, areas to be occupied by troops, and control posts; to prepare and maintain forward airfields; to consolidate important areas and lines during the offensive; to support the negotiation by troops of various obstacles and sectors of demolitions; and to carry out camouflage measures.

125. Operational camouflage in an offensive operation is organized by the front staff and implemented in accordance with the plan it develops. For the purposes of operational camouflage we can establish dummy troop disposition areas and various dummy installations, we can set up dummy airfields, dummy siting areas for rocket troops, artillery and antiaircraft units; and we can prepare axes of troop demonstration actions, and work out and implement deception and radio camouflage measures against the enemy.

To check the effectiveness of operational camouflage, the front staff organizes continuous monitoring utilizing aerial, radiotechnical and other types of reconnaissance.

126. When organizing warfare against enemy radioelectronic means, the following are determined: the principal radiotechnical installations of the enemy which are to be neutralized by jamming; the forces and means allocated to do this, their tasks, and the procedure for employing them; the key control posts and radioelectronic means of the enemy which must be destroyed by air and missile strikes, by artillery fire, and also by the actions of airborne forces and specially trained groups; and the measures for antiradar camouflage in the front's offensive zone.

127. When organizing topogeodetic support in a front (army) offensive operation, special attention is devoted to: establishing reserves of topographic maps and catalogs of the coordinates of geodetic points for the entire depth of the operation and to delivering them on time to the troops; reconnoitering, studying, and analyzing the geodetic network in the offensive zone to the entire depth of the operation; determining the most expedient methods of accomplishing topogeodetic work in order to provide an initial geodetic base for missile and artillery large units and units, aviation, and air defense troops: issuing reconnaissance maps with data on the enemy; producing special maps and photo documents for the sectors of the assault crossing of water obstacles and for landing areas.

For purposes of timely topogeodetic support of the delivery of strikes by the rocket troops, reconnaissance of the siting areas is done with the participation of officers of the topographic service units (subunits) of the front (army); work to develop special-purpose base geodetic networks is performed by units (subunits) of the military topographic service in close cooperation with the topographic service of the rocket troops. Tie-in of the elements of the battle formation of the rocket troops, artillery, aviation, and air defense troops is done by their topogeodetic subunits.

128. To ensure stable and continuous troop control in an offensive operation, a command post, forward command post, and rear control post are deployed in a front (army).

As a rule, the front or army commander (corps commander) exercises troop control from the command post. The command post is deployed in the area from which it is most convenient to control the actions of troops on the offensive, to exercise

stable control of rocket troops, second echelons, and reserves, as well as to maintain unbroken communications with adjacent forces and the superior commander.

The front or army commander (corps commander) exercises control from the forward command post during the period when it is difficult to control troops from the main command post and also when a command post is being moved to a new location or in case it goes out of action. The formation commander can move to the forward command post when he has made the principal decisions and when the situation requires that he be closer to the troops.

The rear control post is intended for control of the front's rear and it is situated in an area that ensures control over rear services units (facilities) and communications with the front command posts. The rear control post must be in constant readiness to assume control over troop combat actions in case of necessity.

Stable troop control, under present-day conditions with high rates of advance, depends to a considerable degree on the timely and organized relocation of control posts and preparation of communications. When an operation is being planned we should determine: the axis of relocating command posts, the time and procedure for relocating, and the areas of their deployment during the operation, and also the forces and means detailed to protect control posts against air and missile strikes, their ground security, and their engineer preparation.

The relocation of front and army (corps) command posts is carried out in a manner ensuring unbroken communications with the troops and higher staffs.

129. In a front (army) a unified communications system is established for all branch arms and services. The front (army) chief of communications troops organizes it over the entire depth of the offensive operation in accordance with the decision of the commander, the orders of the chief of staff, and the instructions on communications of the higher staff.

Radio and radio-relay means are the principal means of communications in an offensive operation.

The radio communications of a front staff with the staffs of its armies is organized on separate radio links and radio nets using teleprinters and secure communications devices. No less than two channels (morse and teleprinter) are used to provide radio communications with each army (large unit).

The backbone of the radio-relay communications of a front consists of one or two multichannel axial lines with lateral lines of communications on the lines of successive deployment of the front's command post. Radio-relay communications of a front command post with the command posts of armies, missile large units and units subordinate to the front are organized by communications links directly from the command post, distance permitting, or else from the nearest auxiliary communications center. Communications to the command post of each army are organized over two links.

The front forward command post must have radio-relay communications with the front command post, with forward command posts of one or two of the nearest armies on the offensive on the axis of the main attack, and with the command posts of the missile units and large units. Radio-relay communications with the command posts of other armies are provided through the front command post.

Wire communications in a front (army) offensive operation are organized by axis and links during preparation of the operation. During the operation, the use of wire communications will be limited due to their great vulnerability to nuclear bursts and the slowness with which cable lines are laid.

For the purposes of radio camouflage when an offensive operation is being prepared, radio and radio-relay communications adhere to their previous operating routine; radio and radio-relay stations of newly arriving troops are forbidden to operate in the transmit mode; the methods used to organize radio communications are those ensuring the greatest concealment, and radio transmitters operate at reduced power. To camouflage the locations of control posts, shortwave transmitting radio sets are taken out beyond the confines of the location of these posts. Radio monitoring of the operation of radio and radio-relay communications is strengthened.

To protect radio communications against enemy jamming, provisions should be made to: organize several radio contacts on different wavebands on the same link; organize covert radio nets and radio links; change over to alternate frequencies with a change of callsigns; conduct radio traffic through intermediate radio stations on bypass links; and to transmit without preliminary netting and without acknowledgment of receipt.

Conducting offensive operations

130. A Front (army) offensive operation can begin with massed nuclear strikes by operational-tactical rocket troops and front aviation coordinated with nuclear strikes by the Strategic Rocket Forces and Long Range Aviation.

The purpose of the nuclear strike is to destroy the enemy's nuclear attack means detected in the offensive zone, inflict damage on his main grouping, disorganize troop control, and disrupt his nuclear strikes against front troops, thereby creating conditions for the final defeat of the enemy by the troops on the offensive. The strike is delivered to the depth of the range of front means or up to the near boundary of the nuclear strikes delivered by strategic means. Tactical missiles and artillery may be allocated to destroy or demolish enemy targets in the tactical depth.

When determining the expenditure of nuclear warheads it is necessary to take into account the possible results of the strikes of the Strategic Rocket Forces and Long Range Aviation. In all cases, nuclear warheads should be expended economically.

When delivering nuclear strikes against important targets situated in the depth, ground (nuclear) bursts can be used so as to inflict considerable losses on enemy reserves, to contain their maneuvering, and to complicate the work of the rear services. In doing so, it is necessary to take into account the meteorological situation and not allow restriction of the maneuver of one's own troops.

131. On axes where the enemy grouping is not neutralized by nuclear weapons or proves to be inadequately neutralized as a result of nuclear strikes, preparatory fire may be delivered, and during the offensive, fire support may be delivered using

conventional and chemical ammunition.

The preparatory fire and fire support must ensure the destruction and dependable neutralization of the fire means and personnel of the opposing enemy troops, disorganize his control, and ensure the defense is overcome rapidly.

To accomplish the tasks of preparatory fire and fire support, the following are brought in: artillery and missile units of first-echelon large units; artillery, missile, and tank units of second-echelon large units of the armies, and in a number of cases, of the front second echelon (reserves); and large units and units of fighter-bomber and bomber aviation.

132. Depending on the situation, the movement forward of front and army (corps) troops for an offensive is carried out directly from their permanent garrison locations, from concentration areas, or from departure areas.

For the purpose of preempting the enemy in deploying troops, the movement forward of the troops to the axis of the offensive must be carried out covertly and in the shortest possible time, exploiting to the maximum the network of paved and dirt roads. During the movement forward, depending on the conditions that have developed, the troops are reorganized into approach march or battle formations, and on separate axes they continue moving in march columns and, exploiting the results of nuclear strikes, go over to the offensive from the march.

The front and army (corps) commanders and staffs must calculate and carry out the movement forward of the attack groupings in such a manner that the first-echelon large units of these groupings, located varying distances away, go over to the offensive as simultaneously as possible. The movement forward of the troops must be reliably safeguarded against enemy air and missile strikes.

The offensive against a defending enemy

133. Negotiation of an enemy defense immediately following nuclear strikes usually is carried out from the march by troops on the offensive with strong forward detachments in the lead.

The forward detachments, reinforced by engineer and chemical subunits, carry out reconnaissance, destroy enemy reconnaissance and forward subunits and units, as well as enemy covering units, seize advantageous areas and lines, and support the development of combat actions by the main forces.

The main forces of front or army (corps) first-echelon large units rapidly move forward behind the forward detachments in deployed march columns without engaging in combat with the enemy's security and covering units.

134. As the forward units advance, the commander and staff of the front or army (corps commander) focus the efforts of reconnaissance on discovering the nature of the enemy defense, the degree of damage suffered by defending troops, and the level of destruction inflicted on defense works resulting from the nuclear strikes we have delivered, and on discovering the presence of breaks and gaps in the defense. Based on reconnaissance data and changes in the situation of his own forces, a front or army commander (corps commander) refines the decision adopted to rout the enemy and refines the tasks of the troops.

As first-echelon divisions approach the enemy's defense line, the front (army) commander delivers strikes with operational-tactical rocket troops and aviation against newly detected enemy nuclear attack means, troop groupings, and control posts, intensifies combat against tactical aircraft, and moves first-echelon troops out to the axes of these strikes.

On some axes, when it is necessary to neutralize an opposing enemy grouping more reliably, preparatory fire may be delivered.

As first-echelon divisions come to the enemy's defense line, they exploit the results of nuclear weapons strikes and preparatory fire, as well as breaks and gaps, to penetrate the defense from the march and get to the flanks and rear of the enemy troops; and, developing the offensive into the depth, they split up and destroy his defensive grouping and approaching reserves and prevent the establishment of a defense on successive lines.

Attacking troops can negotiate the enemy's defense through breaks in his operational disposition and in areas of nuclear strikes or weak resistance using approach march formations in infantry combat vehicles, armored personnel carriers, and motor vehicles. The front (army) commander and large unit commanders must take all measures to ensure high rates of advance.

The troop offensive must be developed by axes, bypassing enemy strongpoints and centers of resistance, and extensively employing bold, aggressive, and independent actions by large units and units against the enemy flanks and rear. The offensive must be conducted so speedily that the troops' rates of advance continuously surpass the buildup of the efforts of the defense. This is achieved by skilful use of nuclear weapons, by daring and resolute troop actions, and by the extensive use of forward detachments and airborne landing forces in conjunction with the rapid destruction of centers of resistance with artillery and tank fire and air strikes.

135. A tank army, maneuvering extensively and bypassing isolated centers of resistance, rapidly negotiates the defense and decisively breaks away from the remaining front forces, moves out on the shortest axes to the areas subjected to nuclear strikes by the Strategic Rocket Forces, seizes and destroys the enemy's nuclear attack means, routs his reserves, disorganizes control and rear services operations, and seizes key operational-strategic areas and installations in the deep rear.

Immediately after negotiating the enemy's defensive positions, large units of the attack groupings of the combined-arms armies, and the tank divisions first of all, in cooperation with the tank army and the airborne landing forces, rapidly develop the offensive on selected axes in order to break out rapidly into the areas subjected to nuclear strikes and to capture important enemy areas and installations at a great depth.

136. The front commander supports the actions of his troops developing the offensive into the depth, especially of the tank army and combined-arms armies which are dashing forward, with all means at his disposal, and first of all with strikes by the rocket troops and aviation and with airborne landings, destroying the enemy's nuclear attack means, aircraft, and advancing reserves.

137. Enemy groupings which remain in the rear of the troops on the offensive must be destroyed without lowering the rates of advance of the troops. To do this, we should utilize a front's or army's (corps') reserves as well as separate first-echelon large units and units, which must rapidly attack the enemy, split him up into small groupings, and destroy him in detail by attacking his flanks and rear. If the situation permits, nuclear and chemical weapons may be used to destroy major enemy groupings remaining in the rear.

138. Successive defensive lines in the depth are negotiated from the march by the troops on the offensive as they exploit breaks in the enemy's battle formations, weak sectors of the defense, and also those axes where the enemy has suffered heavy losses due to the nuclear weapons strikes. The troops should develop the offensive day and night without halting, not permitting the enemy to consolidate and organize a system of fire.

139. During an offensive, the front or army commander (corps commander) and their staffs must: continuously reconnoiter the enemy; refine and assign new tasks to the troops in a timely manner, taking changes in the situation into account; take measures to rapidly destroy detected enemy nuclear attack means and nuclear warhead reserves; constantly implement measures to protect the troops against enemy means of mass destruction and to rapidly restore their combat effectiveness; comprehensively support the combat actions of the troops on the offensive; and monitor the fulfilment of combat tasks.

140. During an offensive, rocket troops deliver nuclear strikes upon orders of the front (army) commander, and first of all against newly detected enemy nuclear attack means, airfields, approaching reserves, and also against major centers of resistance impeding the advance of the troops.

141. At the beginning of an offensive, the front air army combats enemy aircraft and continuously supports the troops by destroying newly detected nuclear attack means of the enemy, his advancing reserves, and radiotechnical means and control posts that have not been destroyed by the rocket troops. In doing so, strikes by fighter-bomber and bomber (missile-delivery) aircraft will primarily destroy small and mobile targets.

In order to ensure continuous support for the troops on the offensive, the front commander takes the necessary measures to prepare airfields for the timely rebasing of aircraft.

142. Airborne landing forces must exploit the results of nuclear strikes against installations in the enemy's rear and assist troops on the offensive in overcoming his resistance.

The landing of airborne forces is supported by the strikes of aircraft and of operational-tactical rocket troops against the enemy's groupings in the landing areas, by reliably neutralizing his air defense forces and means in the flight zone of the landing forces, and by using transport aviation in dispersed formations on the routes.

Airborne forces that have been landed seize the areas assigned to them and hold them until the arrival of the troops on the offensive or else fulfil other tasks. After airborne troops have landed, they may be reinforced by motorized rifle (armored) troops that are airlifted in.

143. The principal efforts of air defense forces and means are concentrated during an offensive on supporting the main groupings of the troops on the offensive as well as the tank and combined-arms armies (divisions) and airborne landing forces operating in the depth. To do this, we organize the timely relocation of radiotechnical means and surface-to-air missile and artillery units and we systematically refine their tasks and cooperation.

144. The front or army commander (corps commander) must devote special attention to combating enemy nuclear attack means. During an operation he focuses the efforts of reconnaissance on the timely and accurate determination of the locations of the enemy's missile sites, his atomic artillery, airfields for missile-delivery aircraft, nuclear warhead and fuel storage depots, his radiotechnical means for missile control and aircraft guidance, concentration areas and routes for missile units arriving from the interior, the rebasing areas of aircraft and transports with nuclear warheads, and also on determination of the regrouping of large units and units which are capable of employing nuclear weapons.

Enemy nuclear attack means that are detected are immediately destroyed by strikes by front (army) rocket troops, by aviation, or artillery. Fighter-bomber aircraft independently seek out and destroy these means and bomber (missile-delivery) aircraft deliver strikes against targets detected by aerial reconnaissance. The capture or destruction of nuclear attack means can also be carried out by bold actions of tank and motorized rifle (armored) large units (units), forward detachments, reconnaissance groups, or airborne landing forces. The choice of forces and means to destroy the enemy's nuclear attack means is determined according to their availability and their capability of quickly and effectively accomplishing the task under the specific conditions of the situation.

145. To successfully develop an offensive operation it is very important to rout the enemy's reserves in good time and to repel his counterattacks.

The front (army) commander, on the basis of reconnaissance data, assigns to operational-tactical missile large units and units and to the air army the tasks of destroying the most dangerous grouping of enemy reserves while they are in the most vulnerable position and he directs first-echelon armies (large units) to finish off the reserves by bold and decisive actions. To rout enemy reserves, second echelons and reserves of the front or of the armies may also be committed to the engagement.

Enemy reserves which have hastily gone over to the defense on intermediate lines in the operational depth are to be destroyed with nuclear strikes and by the troops on the offensive, with these lines being negotiated from the march.

146. Repelling the counterattacks of enemy operational reserves may often occur in a complex situation with an unfavorable balance of forces and means, when a portion of the first-echelon forces of the front (army) is forced to temporarily go over to the defense on the lines reached. Under these conditions, in order to rout the counterattacking enemy grouping, the front (army) commander must rapidly and decisively concentrate nuclear strikes by operational-tactical rocket troops and aviation and also concentrate tank and motorized rifle (armored) divisions from the front (army) reserve and from other axes to ensure the continuation of the offensive.

When destroying a counterattack grouping, nuclear weapons must be used first of all against enemy nuclear attack means and tank groupings. At the same time we should make extensive use of conventional weapons -- tanks, aircraft, and artillery.

For the purposes of routing an enemy counterattack grouping, adjacent armies and divisions must develop a rapid offensive and break out to the flanks and rear of this grouping.

147. During an offensive, drastic changes in the situation and in the balance of forces on the decisive axes may require refining the previously adopted plan and conducting bold troop maneuvering which must be carried out rapidly and covertly.

Maneuvering nuclear means is of decisive importance under present-day conditions. The presence of long-range missiles in a front (army) permits us to use them extensively to deliver strikes against enemy forces and means in any area throughout the entire offensive zone of the front (army) and to provide assistance to the troops on the offensive on decisive axes, which can drastically change the situation in our favor in the very shortest amount of time. Maneuvering of nuclear means, aviation, and artillery fire is employed primarily to deliver strikes against newly detected groupings of the enemy's rocket troops, his airfields for missile-delivery aircraft, and his large units of armored troops.

Maneuvering of tank and combined-arms armies (large units) is employed in order to shift troop efforts to other axes, to restore attack groupings on those axes where troops have suffered heavy losses from enemy nuclear strikes, to rout his advancing groupings and approaching reserves, and to repel counterattacks.

When carrying out troop maneuvering it is necessary to make sure it is carried out rapidly and is reliably supported, without permitting the troops to be bunched up and employed on those axes where the enemy defense has not been neutralized and where the troops will not achieve success. To carry out maneuvering rapidly, we can use, in addition to organic troop transport, military transport aviation and helicopter units.

148. The conduct of combat actions in areas subjected to nuclear strikes poses special complexity owing to the severe

destruction and possible retention of high levels of radiation in some areas.

Before front troops get to these areas, the front or army commander determines more precisely what strikes the areas have been subjected to and when, he assesses the situation in these areas and, on the basis of this, assigns tasks to the armies (divisions) and defines their methods of action, without permitting the rates of advance to slacken.

During an offensive in areas subjected to strikes by strategic nuclear means, the front or army (corps) staff must strengthen radiation and chemical reconnaissance and also monitor the conduct of reconnaissance in each large unit and unit.

149. To ensure that an offensive develops continuously and is conducted at high rates of advance, it is necessary to build up the efforts of first-echelon armies (corps) in a timely manner. This is achieved by delivering nuclear strikes with rocket troops and aviation to support these armies (corps) in the accomplishment of their tasks, by reinforcing them with divisions from the front (army) reserve, or by using regroupings from other axes, and in a number of cases by allocating additional nuclear warheads to them and by committing combined-arms or tank armies (large units) from the front (army) second echelon to the engagement.

Reserves from the depth must be moved up on a wide front, by individual large units along several routes, and concentrating them must be done covertly so that the enemy is taken by surprise when they are later committed to battle, taking advantage of weak sectors in his defense.

150. A front second-echelon combined-arms (tank) army (second-echelon corps) is committed to the engagement in accordance with the concept of the operation and the specific conditions of the situation that has developed. As a rule, it is committed to the engagement in order to accomplish the front's subsequent task, and in certain cases, depending on the situation, also when the immediate task is being accomplished.

Relocating a second-echelon army (corps) and moving it forward to the area of commitment to the engagement should, if

possible, be carried out at night, with only individual large units and units moved in daytime. The zone of forward movement of a second-echelon army (corps) must ensure that several routes are allocated to each first-echelon division and permit the army (corps) to go in dispersed march formations.

The forward movement of a second-echelon army (corps) is safeguarded by front surface-to-air missile troops and front fighter aviation and also by organic surface-to-air means and part of the air defense forces of the first-echelon armies through whose zones it moves forward.

151. A second-echelon army (corps) is committed on axes which ensure a rapid advance to a great depth and a breakout onto the flanks and rear of the enemy's main grouping so as to complete its final defeat and seize important enemy areas (installations). In doing so, we exploit the gaps between the armies of the first echelon of the front and the large units of the enemy as well as sectors poorly covered by his forces.

In order to avoid complex troop regroupings, individual large units of a first-echelon army operating on the axes of commitment of a second-echelon army (corps) may be transferred to the army (corps) being committed.

Before committing the second echelon, the front (army) commander refines its task and axis of commitment, indicates the targets and time for the delivery of nuclear strikes by front (army) means, the time of commitment to battle, the number of nuclear warheads allocated, their yield and arrival times, deployment and cooperation procedures, reinforcement means and when they will be transferred to the army (corps), and he also issues orders on matters of protection against means of mass destruction and on engineer and materiel-technical support.

152. A second-echelon army (corps), especially a tank army, that has been committed to the engagement and is exploiting the results of nuclear strikes and the gaps unoccupied by enemy forces, penetrates rapidly and deeply, accomplishes the rout of opposing enemy groupings and advancing reserves, destroys missile means and aircraft, seizes vitally important objectives, and disrupts transportation lines and control.

153. The commitment of a reserve front to the engagement is carried out in accordance with instructions of the Supreme High Command on the adjacent flanks or on the exposed flank of one of the operating fronts. As a rule, formations and large units operating in the zone of the reserve front's commitment to the engagement are transferred to it.

Depending on the situation and the tasks of the reserve front, the armies within its complement may be committed to the engagement simultaneously or successively.

The commitment of a front to the engagement is preceded by nuclear and chemical weapons strikes against the enemy's means of mass destruction, principal troop groupings, airfields, and control posts. Missile large units (units) and aircraft of the forward-operating formations and of the reserve front are brought in for this.

Operational-tactical missile large units (units) of the reserve front must move forward with timeliness and occupy siting areas, and air army large units must be rebased to forward airfields.

The Supreme High Command organizes the cooperation of the reserve front with the operating fronts and with formations (large units) of other branches of the Armed Forces.

154. In the course of an offensive operation, front (army) forces may encircle and destroy enemy operational groupings and a corps may do the same to enemy tactical groupings. As a rule, encircling and destroying a major grouping in the theater of military operations will be accomplished by the combined efforts of adjacent fronts or -- on coastal axes -- in cooperation with naval forces.

The encirclement of enemy groupings and their destruction are accomplished at the same time. To do this, we must: rapidly and decisively weaken an enemy grouping by nuclear strikes; advance swiftly with armies (divisions) to the lines of retreat of this grouping or land airborne landing forces on the lines of retreat; wage a continuous offensive for the purpose of promptly splintering the encircled grouping and destroying it in detail; decisively develop the offensive into the depth, destroy the

enemy's nuclear attack means, rout his deep reserves, and disrupt control and the work of the rear.

To contain the maneuvering of the encircled enemy grouping and to bar its retreat, by decision of the front (army) commander sectors of chemical contamination and of engineer obstacles can be established on the lines of retreat.

155. When the front or army commander (corps commander) assigns tasks to the armies (corps, divisions) participating in the encirclement and destruction of an enemy, he indicates: which targets they are to hit with their own nuclear weapons, the axes of actions, the enemy groupings which they must destroy as well as the areas the troops must reach, the demarcation lines, the procedure for exploiting the results of strikes by front rocket troops and aviation, the lines of troop contact and of troop safety when nuclear weapons are used, and also the cooperation signals for ground forces and aviation.

156. The rapid encirclement of the enemy is achieved by having a tank army and the tank divisions of combined-arms armies break out rapidly to the flanks and the lines of retreat of his principal grouping, and also by employing airborne landing forces.

As a rule, a tank army must not be called upon to destroy an encircled enemy grouping. It should be used primarily for rapid development of the offensive into the depth.

While destroying the encircled enemy grouping it is necessary to blockade it from the air with forces of the front air army and air defense troops, thereby depriving the enemy of the opportunity of supplying or of evacuating this grouping. On a coastal axis an encircled grouping should also be blockaded from the sea using naval forces.

Front (army) troops developing the offensive into the depth must rapidly advance and, with decisive actions, rout enemy forces moving forward to aid the encircled grouping.

If, during an offensive operation, front (army) troops encircle a major grouping in an area of great importance to the enemy whch is tenaciously held because a strong all-around

defense has been established, the destruction of the grouping defending this area should be accomplished with nuclear strikes and a rapid offensive of troops, with exploitation of gaps and other weak places in the defense.

157. During an offensive operation, front or army (corps) troops will have to negotiate a considerable number of water obstacles where the enemy may have organized a defense. On the approaches to a water obstacle or directly on its banks the enemy may have created zones of destruction, of radioactive and chemical contamination, and sectors of engineer obstacles.

Negotiation of a water obstacle by troops on the offensive must not lower the rates of advance. Therefore, these troops must make the assault crossings of water obstacles from the march on a wide front regardless of their width or the nature of the defense organized at them. In doing so we must avoid creating large concentrations of troops both on our bank and on the opposite bank.

After negotiating a water obstacle, troops immediately develop the offensive into the depth without halting on the bridgeheads and destroy surviving groups and approaching reserves of the enemy from the march.

158. The principal conditions which ensure the success of an assault crossing of water obstacles from the march are: careful organization of the assault crossing, destruction of the enemy's nuclear attack means and the rout of his opposing grouping on the approaches to the water obstacle and on the opposite bank, preemption of the enemy in seizing important crossings with forward detachments and airborne landing forces, timely movement of crossing means up to the water obstacle and skilful use of them, rapid negotiation of the water obstacle with the main forces, and non-stop development of the offensive on the opposite bank.

The decision to make the assault crossing of a water obstacle is adopted by a front or army commander (corps commander) ahead of time when he is still preparing the operation (battle) or when it is underway.

During the approach to the water obstacle the formation commander (commander) specifies: the nature and condition of the water obstacles, the most convenient or advantageous sectors for the assault crossing; and the nature of the enemy's defense on the opposite bank -- his forces, the sites of missile launchers, the grouping of troops, and areas where nuclear warhead depots and control posts are located.

In his decision on the assault crossing of a water obstacle from the march, the front or army commander (corps commander) determines:

-- the concept for routing the enemy grouping on both banks of the water obstacle;

-- the targets and procedure for delivering nuclear strikes by rocket troops and aviation;

-- the tasks and assault crossing sectors of the armies (corps, divisions);

-- the tasks and procedure for the use of forward detachments and airborne landing forces;

-- the allocation of crossing means and maneuvering of them;

-- the locations of front or army (corps) crossing sites, the times they are to be ready, and the procedure for using them;

-- the organization of air defense and the accomplishment of other measures to support the assault crossing.

The decision must also reflect measures to ensure the uninterrupted and rapid buildup of forces on the opposite bank and the rapid development of the offensive by troops which have made the crossing.

159. To make the assault crossing of a water obstacle we use primarily those sectors where the enemy defense is weaker and where the troop crossing can be organized more conveniently.

The assault crossing of a water obstacle usually is made in the same grouping as the one in which the troops have been

conducting the offensive. In case it becomes necessary to build up the efforts of the first echelon in order to preempt the enemy in reaching the water obstacle, reserves, and sometimes second echelons, can be used.

The main body of the artillery moves up closer to the forward detachments and the main forces of the first-echelon divisions. The crossing means allocated to the troops are moved up within the first echelon.

The engineer units that have crossing means and remain in the front or army (corps) reserve are moved behind the first echelon on the main axis in readiness to reinforce the crossing sites in the sectors of the assault crossing.

160. Strong forward detachments seize the crossing sites and sectors on the opposite bank. Exploiting the results of nuclear strikes, they rapidly negotiate the water obstacle supported by aviation and artillery and support the crossing of the main forces.

The capture of the crossing sites and sectors on the opposite bank can be accomplished by airborne landing forces, which are also charged with the tasks of preventing the approach of reserves to the water crossing and of preventing the enemy from blowing up hydrotechnical installations for the purpose of flooding the terrain.

Successful actions of forward detachments and airborne landing forces are immediately exploited by the main forces of the first-echelon divisions, which rapidly cross over to the opposite bank on organic and attached crossing means. Tanks can cross the water obstacle on the bottom.

To maneuver crossing means, especially when the principal roads are occupied (destroyed) or when there are zones of radioactive contamination, helicopters should be used more extensively.

In those instances when on certain axes front or army (corps) troops have been unable to make the assault crossing of a water obstacle from the march because of enemy resistance, forces should be regrouped from this axis to the sector where the

assault crossing and development of the offensive are proceeding successfully or to an axis where the enemy has a weak grouping of forces, and there they should organize an assault crossing, preparing it in a short period of time.

161. The assault crossing of major water obstacles can be carried out in cooperation with naval river flotillas, to which the following tasks can be assigned:

-- to destroy enemy river ships hindering the assault crossing of the river;

-- to assist the troops on the offensive with mortar and artillery fire from ships;

-- to land landing forces on the opposite bank;

-- to carry troops across the river using flotilla forces and means;

-- to clear the river of mines.

162. During the front or army (corps) offensive the enemy may begin a retreat or a planned withdrawal, going over to delaying actions. Upon detecting the first indications that the enemy is retreating, the front or army commander (corps commander) organizes a pursuit.

The purpose of a pursuit is to destroy or capture the retreating enemy. As a result of a continuous and rapid pursuit, the main forces of the retreating enemy must be cut off from his approaching reserves and from advantageous defensive lines in the rear area, and they must be split up and destroyed or captured.

163. The principal method of troop action in the pursuit is a parallel pursuit by tank and motorized rifle (armored) divisions with an envelopment of one or both flanks of the retreating enemy grouping.

A parallel pursuit must be combined with a frontal pursuit. A frontal pursuit is conducted by a portion of the forces of a first-echelon army (corps) for the purpose of delaying the retreat of the enemy's main forces, of preventing them from

disengaging, of affording troops conducting the parallel pursuit the opportunity of breaking out onto the flanks of the retreating enemy groupings, of cutting off their lines of retreat, and then of destroying them by combined actions.

A pursuit must be conducted continuously day and night with the full intensity of all the forces of the troops in all weather conditions, using the greatest possible number of routes parallel to the axis of the enemy's retreat. The rates of advance of the troops conducting a pursuit along these routes must be greater than the speed of retreat of the enemy's main forces; this will allow us to overtake his retreating columns and prevent him from organizing a defense on the final line of retreat.

At the same time the troops go over to a pursuit, it is necessary to deliver nuclear strikes against the enemy's nuclear attack means, his airfields, principal retreating troop groupings and advancing reserves.

To preempt the enemy in the capture of important road junctions and crossings on his lines of retreat we should land airborne landing forces.

164. In anticipation of a pursuit of the enemy, reconnaissance of all types must determine:

-- the beginning and axes of retreat of the enemy's main forces;

-- the positions of missile units, their axes of relocation, and their new deployment areas;

-- the composition and nature of the actions of the enemy's rearguards;

-- the presence of intermediate defensive lines, how they are prepared, the enemy's forces and troop grouping on these lines, and also his final line of retreat;

-- the presence and nature of zones of contamination and of obstacles on the lines of pursuit;

-- the unloading and concentration areas of the enemy's reserves, their strength, axes of movement, and probable methods of employment.

165. Upon establishing that the enemy has begun a retreat, commanders will begin the pursuit without delay on their own initiative.

A front or army commander (corps commander) focuses the efforts of the first-echelon armies (divisions), and tank troops above all, in order to advance rapidly to the enemy's lines of retreat.

The pursuit of the enemy usually is carried out in the same troop grouping we had at the beginning of his retreat. To ensure high rates of pursuit, the main forces of first-echelon armies (corps, and, above all, the tank divisions) rapidly form up into battalion and regimental columns and move out rapidly on routes paralleling the retreat of the enemy's main forces.

The troops of the first echelon of the front or army (corps), in going over to the pursuit and operating aggressively, destroy or envelop covering units, penetrate into the flanks and rear of the enemy's retreating groupings, preempt him in seizing key road junctions, defiles, and crossings, and, attacking from the march immediately following nuclear strikes, complete the final defeat of his main forces.

To destroy enemy groupings left in the rear and on the flanks of pursuing troops, it is necessary to employ part of the first-echelon forces of the front and of the armies (corps). But the main forces must penetrate ahead in order to seize important areas and objectives in the depth.

The tank army and the combined-arms armies (corps) advance rapidly into the deep rear of the enemy, destroy his nuclear attack means, seize airfields that are suitable for basing aircraft, rout reserves without allowing their large units to join up with the retreating troops, and disorganize control and supply.

The success of the combat actions of a tank army and of combined-arms armies (corps) during pursuit depends on the

precise coordination of their actions with the strikes of front rocket troops and aviation and with the actions of airborne landing forces, and on their skilful exploitation of strikes by the Strategic Rocket Forces, and also on the organization of their protection against weapons of mass destruction.

In those cases when the enemy succeeds in holding up pursuing troops on certain axes by delivering nuclear strikes and creating zones of destruction and of radioactive contamination, the front or army commander (corps commander) must, immediately following strikes by rocket troops, aviation, and artillery against enemy troops, rapidly commit his reserves to the engagement and, through an attack on the flank with the bypassing or negotiation of zones of destruction and radioactive contamination, destroy the enemy and prevent him from retreating to new lines.

166. During a pursuit, front (army) rocket troops destroy enemy nuclear attack means, deliver strikes against the main grouping of retreating troops when they bunch up in areas of defiles and crossings, destroy enemy reserves, and contain their maneuvering.

Artillery, advancing with the troops, destroys enemy tactical means of nuclear attack, supports the combat actions of first-echelon divisions, safeguards the commitment of the reserves and second echelon of the army (corps) to the engagement, and by conducting short preparatory fire, assists the large units in routing the enemy on his defensive lines and in destroying groupings that have been cut off.

167. During a pursuit, aviation destroys the enemy's nuclear attack means and aircraft, assists front troops in destroying retreating groupings, hinders the enemy in occupying the defense on intermediate lines, prevents his reserves from moving up, continuously covers one's own forces, and supports the landing of airborne landing forces and their actions in the enemy rear.

168. During a pursuit, airborne landing forces can be used to accomplish these tasks:

-- to destroy the enemy's means of using nuclear, chemical, and bacteriological weapons and his reserves of these weapons;

-- to interdict the lines of retreat of the main grouping;

-- to hold up the approach of reserves;

-- to seize and hold bridgeheads at water obstacles as well as areas on defensive lines and beyond the zones of radioactive contamination for the purpose of assisting the front's (army's) main grouping in negotiating them:

-- to disrupt the enemy's troop control and disorganize the work of his rear.

During a pursuit on a coastal axis, airborne landing forces can also be landed in order to capture and hold ports, naval bases, or coastal sectors in cooperation with amphibious landing forces.

169. During a pursuit, the air defense forces and means of the front and armies concentrate their principal efforts on safeguarding missile large units and units, main troop groupings, as well as airborne landing forces operating deep in the enemy's rear against enemy air strikes.

For effective air defense during a pursuit, radiotechnical means of reconnoitering the air enemy, surface-to-air missile units, and fighter aviation must relocate and deploy with timeliness behind the troops on the offensive.

170. Troop control during a pursuit is characterized by the assignment of tasks to troops for more extended periods of time and by the granting of greater independence to subordinates. Provost and traffic control service and communications on the troop movement routes, organized with timeliness and efficiently implemented by a front or army (corps), are of great importance in achieving continuous troop control. At major road junctions, at crossroads, at water obstacle crossing sites, in passes, and in defiles it is necessary to have officer posts with radios and messenger means of communications.

171. To provide troops with materiel-technical means without interruption during a pursuit, we must:

-- rapidly clear obstacles from rail and motor roads and restore them;

-- move mobile reserves and repair means forward with timeliness behind the troops on the offensive;

-- organize the air delivery of cargo to the troops;

-- use local resources extensively.

172. During the development of an offensive operation, aggressive troop combat actions must be conducted continuously day and night. Ensuring high rates of advance under night conditions is achieved by:

-- selecting the axes of attacks insofar as possible on open terrain which is relatively unbroken;

-- assigning to large units (units) tasks whose fulfilment does not involve the conduct of complex maneuvering;

-- allocating to the first echelon those forces which will allow it to accomplish the task assigned for the night without committing reserves or second echelons;

-- providing troops with night vision and illumination equipment and by carefully organizing the providing of terrain and target illumination;

-- effectively combating the enemy's radiotechnical and illumination means, infrared equipment, and radar detection means.

To conduct night actions it is expedient to commit divisions (regiments) from the army (corps) reserve or second echelon to the engagement starting in the evening. These divisions (regiments), operating on the assigned axes, must penetrate more deeply into the enemy disposition and seize his important areas, crossings, and road junctions with the aim of creating conditions favoring the rapid continuation of the offensive at first light.

In delivering nuclear strikes at night, it is necessary to devote special attention to the timely notification of the troops so that personnel may take preventive measures against being blinded and harmed by luminous radiation.

173. During an offensive operation it is necessary to conduct continuous reconnaissance of all types. The reconnaissance must establish:

-- the disposition and relocation areas of missile launchers and of depots with nuclear warheads, and also the home airfields of missile-delivery aircraft;

-- the disposition of enemy air defense forces and means as well as radiotechnical means;

-- the approach of enemy reserves and their concentration areas, movement forward and deployment for a meeting engagement and for the launching of counterattacks;

-- the preparation and occupation by enemy troops of defensive areas and lines in the depth;

-- the initiation and axes of a retreat by enemy troops;

-- changes in the grouping of aviation;

-- enemy control posts and the relocation of enemy staffs;

-- the appearance of new types of weapons and the employment of new methods of conducting combat actions;

-- the availability and condition of roads in the enemy disposition.

To rapidly carry out the final reconnaissance of important targets before delivering nuclear strikes against them, reconnaissance aircraft and other reconnaissance means must constantly be kept in increased readiness in the front (army).

174. Important areas and lines seized in the course of an offensive operation must be rapidly consolidated by the troops.

The consolidation of separate areas and lines may take place during an operation in order to safeguard the flanks and rear of troop groupings operating separately from other front forces, to repel a strong enemy counterattack, and to secure favorable conditions for crossing operations over a wide water obstacle, and for a number of other cases.

To accomplish these tasks of the front, the army (corps) as a rule allocates a portion of its forces, primarily from the reserves or by taking troops away from secondary axes.

175. In case it is necessary to conduct a number of successive operations in the initial period of a war in order to achieve our strategic goals in a theater of military operations, each succeeding operation must be initiated without delay immediately following the preceding one.

This is achieved by:

-- planning the operation and creating the necessary front (army) troop grouping to conduct the succeeding operation while the preceding one is being completed;

-- bringing up and stockpiling ammunition of all types, fuel and lubricants, and other materiel, as well as by moving rear services units and facilities up closer to the troops before the operation being conducted is completed;

-- organizing with timeliness the reception of replacement personnel and combat equipment and bringing large units and units up to full strength.

The meeting engagement

176. A meeting engagement is one of the most difficult forms of offensive action for operational large units, as during the course of it both sides will endeavor to achieve their assigned goals by using nuclear weapons and a troop offensive.

Meeting engagements can take place both in offensive operations and while conducting defensive operations, and they can develop on one axis or on several axes and to varying depths simultaneously or successively. They can be fought with advancing enemy reserves during an offensive or with his groupings which have broken through into the operational depth of our defending troops. Offensive operations may begin with a meeting engagement, particularly in the initial period of a war.

The goal of a meeting engagement is to rapidly rout the enemy's principal grouping, seize the initiative, and create conditions favoring the subsequent development of the operation.

177. A meeting engagement is characterized by the limited time available to organize combat actions, by drastic and rapid changes in the situation during the engagement, by an intense struggle to seize and retain the initiative, by rapidity of combat actions, by the entry of troops into the engagement from the march, and by extensive maneuvering to envelop the flanks and attack the rear of enemy groupings.

Success in a meeting engagement is achieved by: continuously conducting all types of reconnaissance and receiving timely data on the enemy; preempting him in delivering nuclear strikes, in deploying attacking troop groupings, and in going over to the offensive; delivering a powerful initial strike against the enemy troops, rapidly taking the initiative in our hands, and retaining it throughout the entire engagement; resolutely executing troop maneuver and delivering attacks against the flanks and rear of the enemy groupings; resoluteness in achieving the assigned goal and the manifestation of broad initiative by commanders at all levels; and by exercising stable control over the troops.

178. The rout of the enemy in a meeting engagement is carried out by inflicting a defeat on him with nuclear weapons and by the rapid offensive of attack groupings of troops immediately following the nuclear strikes in order to complete the destruction of the opposing enemy forces.

Nuclear weapons are used to strike the enemy's main grouping of troops, primarily armored large units, in their concentration areas and while they are moving forward and deploying, and they are used to destroy nuclear attack means and control posts. For the purposes of holding up the forward movement of enemy reserves from the depth, in some cases we may deliver nuclear strikes against them employing ground bursts.

Preempting the enemy in delivering nuclear strikes and in deploying the troops in a meeting engagement can ensure we rout him with lesser forces.

Delivering massed preemptive nuclear strikes against the enemy can lead to the utter rout of his advancing groupings. Under these conditions front (army) troops must continue a rapid offensive into the depth while completing the destruction of separate scattered enemy groups from the march.

179. In a meeting engagement, the principal efforts of our troops must be concentrated on delivering attacks against the flanks and rear of the enemy's main grouping. A frontal attack on one or several axes can be used in those cases when getting the main forces to the flanks of the enemy grouping will involve a loss of time or when this is difficult because of terrain conditions.

Frontal attacks must not lead to drawn-out battles, the establishment of a continuous front, nor to the loss of the rates of advance. On every axis of the offensive the troops must exploit breaks and gaps in the enemy disposition in order to carry out very wide-ranging maneuvering and develop the offensive at high rates.

180. In anticipation of a meeting engagement, the principal efforts of all types of reconnaissance, especially aerial reconnaissance, must focus on the timely acquisition of accurate data on the location of nuclear attack means and of aircraft

groupings; on the composition, disposition, and movement forward of the enemy's reserves, especially his armored troops; and also on the radiation situation and on the nature of the terrain in the area of the forthcoming meeting engagement.

The timely receipt of all necessary reports on the enemy will ensure the delivery of preemptive strikes against him.

181. The front (army) commander, without waiting for the receipt of complete data on the situation, must, on the basis of an analysis of available reconnaissance data on the enemy as well as of the capabilities and operational condition of his own troops, make his decision so as to preempt the enemy in delivering strikes with nuclear weapons, aircraft, and long-range artillery; establish the required troop grouping, assign it its tasks, and organize cooperation and support beforehand; and preempt the enemy in seizing advantageous areas and lines in order to secure the commitment of the main forces to the engagement. He must devote particular attention to the timely readiness of rocket troops and aviation to deliver nuclear strikes, and also to the strengthening of troop air defense.

In his decision on the meeting engagement, the front (army) commander determines: the measures to combat the enemy's nuclear attack means and aviation; against which enemy troop groupings and when nuclear strikes are to be delivered; the troop groupings which are to complete the rout of the enemy, their methods of action, axis of main attack and of other attacks, and the operational disposition of the troops; the tasks of the operational formations (large units), including tasks to seize areas and lines which ensure the organized entry of the troops into the engagement; the tasks of rocket troops, aviation, airborne troops, and reserves; the procedure for troop cooperation during the engagement; the tasks of air defense troops; the measures to support troop actions, especially those to ensure concealment of the movement of troop groupings and achieve surprise when attacking the enemy; and he specifies the organization of control.

182. Troop groupings established to conduct a meeting engagement must ensure: the rapid exploitation of the results of the use of nuclear weapons against the enemy in order to deliver powerful attacks on the flanks and rear of his main forces, the

conduct of a troop maneuver from the depth and along the front to decisive axes, and readiness to repel strong enemy attacks, especially by armored forces.

In a meeting engagement a front or army may be operationally disposed in one or two echelons. In a number of cases, the second echelon and the reserves will be formed during the engagement by using troops coming up from the interior and troops taken from other sectors of the front.

In a meeting engagement, large units of an army are assigned an immediate task, and the axis of subsequent attack is indicated.

The substance of the immediate task of a first-echelon large unit is to rout enemy first-echelon troops and capture areas or objectives which ensure the subsequent development of the offensive into the depth.

183. A meeting engagement usually begins with the delivery of preemptive nuclear strikes and also of strikes using chemical weapons and conventional means of destruction against the enemy's nuclear attack means, aircraft groupings, and main troop groupings, especially armored large units. As a result of these strikes, the organized employment of nuclear weapons by the enemy should be disrupted, decisive damage should be inflicted on the main hostile groupings before they come into contact with our troops, and the enemy's control should be disorganized. These very things must bring about conditions favoring the quick final defeat of his troops.

184. A meeting engagement by first-echelon large units begins with aggressive combat actions of the forward detachments, which, immediately following nuclear strikes, attack forward units and reconnaissance units from the the march and boldly penetrate between the enemy's troop columns, forcing him to deploy on unfavorable lines. Upon encountering superior forces, the forward detachments seize important lines and objectives and repel the enemy attacks, thus supporting the movement forward and maneuvering of the main forces for an attack on the flanks and rear of the enemy grouping. Sometimes tactical airborne landing forces may be landed to preempt the enemy in seizure of an advantageous line.

As the forward detachments join battle, operational-tactical rocket troops, front aviation, and artillery continue to deliver strikes against newly detected nuclear attack means, and against the deploying troops, reserves, and control posts of the enemy. Strikes by fire are intensified as first-echelon large units approach and deploy.

The main forces of first-echelon combined-arms large units, exploiting the results of nuclear strikes and of the combat actions of the forward detachments, as well as gaps in the disposition of enemy troops, deliver attacks from the march against the flanks of the opposing grouping, split it up and develop a rapid offensive into the depth for the purpose of rapidly completing its destruction in detail. In doing so, we must not permit the front's (army's) main forces to get involved in a drawn-out engagement with individual enemy groupings. Depending on the situation, large units may attack in columns, in approach march formations, or in battle formations.

Tank armies and the tank divisions of combined-arms armies must be employed on those axes which permit them to penetrate as deeply as possible into the enemy's disposition, to rout advancing reserves, to destroy the nuclear attack means that have been detected, to break up troop maneuvering, to disrupt his control and supply, and to rapidly capture important areas and objectives in the depth.

185. On those axes where enemy groupings have succeeded in deploying and going over to the offensive, routing them is accomplished by nuclear strikes and meeting attacks by troops or by repelling the offensive with a portion of our own forces and simultaneously conducting attacks against the flanks and rear of the attacking enemy grouping from adjacent sectors of the front. Enemy groupings advancing through terrain sectors unoccupied by troops to the threatened axes are destroyed by nuclear strikes, chemical weapons, and the fire of conventional means.

When a meeting engagement develops unfavorably on one of the axes of offensive, the front (army) can, with part of its forces, temporarily go over to the defense on this axis, halt the enemy's offensive, weaken his forces, and then go over to decisive actions.

If the enemy discontinues the further offensive in a given sector and attempts to shift his efforts to a different axis, the defending troops will resolutely go over to the offensive, destroy the enemy's units left behind for coverage, and engage in battle with his main forces which are carrying out the maneuver.

186. The final destruction of fragmented groupings and isolated units of the enemy which remain in the rear and on the flanks of attack groupings of the front (army) is effected by specially allocated large units and units of the first echelon. To do this we can also bring in separate large units of the combined-arms reserve (second echelon). We can use nuclear weapons to rapidly destroy powerful enemy groupings.

187. As a rule, the combined-arms reserve (second echelon) of a front (army) is used to develop the offensive into the depth on the main axis. Separate large units of the reserve can be called upon for the final defeat of enemy groupings in the immediate operational depth.

188. In a meeting engagement which occurs during the delivery of a counterattack in the course of defensive actions, nuclear strikes are frequently readied beforehand and are delivered against the enemy's main grouping that is on the offensive or has penetrated into the depth, against his nuclear means, and against his approaching reserves.

The movement forward and deployment of counterattack groupings is supported by the defending forces and forward detachments.

Most frequently, the principal efforts of counterattack groupings will concentrate on the total defeat of the enemy groupings on the offensive. Under these conditions, it is advantageous for troop attacks to be delivered against the flanks of the enemy grouping that has penetrated or broken through.

In those cases where the enemy's main grouping retains its offensive capabilities when joined in a meeting engagement, it will be expedient for us to have a strong reserve within the disposition of the troops delivering the counterattack so as to repel possible enemy flank attacks against the main forces of our counterattack grouping.

189. When organizing a meeting engagement and delivering preemptive nuclear strikes, the front (army) commander exercises control from the command post or from the forward command post. During a meeting engagement, as a rule, the army commander exercises troop control from the forward command post. Control posts are moved up closer to the troops ahead of time.

During a meeting engagement special attention must be devoted to ensuring continuous cooperation between the formations (large units) and the rocket troop and aviation units employing nuclear weapons, and also between the large units delivering an attack from various axes against the enemy grouping.

190. When organizing a meeting engagement, a front (army) commander specifies exactly the forces and means which are to conduct radiation, chemical, and bacteriological reconnaissance on the troop movement routes and in the deployment areas, their tasks, the procedure to warn troops of the danger of radioactive, chemical, and bacteriological contamination, and the measures to provide the personnel with protection when they are operating on contaminated terrain; he determines the tasks for camouflaging the troops and the methods of negotiating contaminated zones, and he also specifies the tasks of the troops to eliminate the aftereffects of enemy use of weapons of mass destruction.

191. In anticipation of a meeting engagement, measures are taken for the advance preparation and delivery of missiles and nuclear warheads to the troops, and also for the replenishment up to established norms of the mobile materiel reserves with the troops, particularly fuel and ammunition. Mobile army bases, army medical detachments, and reserve medical facilities are moved forward to the axes of the forthcoming meeting engagement.

The characteristics of offensive operations on coastal axes

192. The special characteristic of offensive operations on coastal axes consists in the fact that the forces and means participating in them must not only destroy opposing groupings of ground forces and aviation, but also enemy naval forces. This requires conduct of the offensive operation through the joint efforts of a front or army (corps) and of a fleet or flotilla (naval large unit), precise organization of cooperation among them, and firm control of all the forces participating in the

operation.

In the main, coastal axes are characterized by a great number of rivers flowing to the sea, extensive areas of swamps, mountainous and forested-mountainous areas that are difficult to traverse, the presence of islands at varying distances away from the shore, and straits zones. Negotiating all of these water obstacles and difficult terrain sectors also constitutes one of the key characteristics in the preparation and conduct of front or army offensive operations (corps combat actions) on a coastal axis.

Front (army) offensive operations on coastal axes with naval forces participating will most often be conducted along a sea (ocean) shore with one flank -- and in certain cases, both flanks -- to the sea. Sometimes these operations may be conducted from the depth of a land theater of military operations with the troops breaking out to the seacoast.

193. Front or army (corps) troops in an offensive operation (battle) on a coastal axis accomplish the following tasks: by rapid offensive actions immediately following nuclear strikes they complete the final defeat of the enemy's coastal groupings; they capture his naval bases, ports, straits zones, islands, and key installations on the shore; and with the forces of the air army in cooperation with the fleet, they combat the enemy's naval forces.

During the offensive, as troops advance along the coast, an antilanding defense is organized for the purpose of consolidating the captured ports, naval bases, straits, islands, and other key coastal objectives and of preventing enemy landings from the sea in the rear of the troops on the offensive. The complement of forces and means allocated for the antilanding defense depends on the combat strength of the front and the extent and importance of the coast to be defended.

The navy in a joint offensive operation on a coastal axis prevents attacks from the sea by enemy naval forces against our troops on the offensive and the entry of enemy ship groupings and amphibious landing forces into closed seas through straits; it carries out the landing of amphibious landing forces, disrupts maritime traffic, seals off an enemy grouping that has been

pressed to the sea or encircled and assists front troops in destroying it, destroys naval bases, ports, and other important installations on the coast, and also accomplishes the sealift of troops and materiel.

Front and fleet aviation -- and also long range aviation -- participating in an offensive operation on a coastal axis destroys the enemy's nuclear attack means, his aircraft and naval forces, neutralizes his antilanding defenses, disrupts maritime traffic, and destroys naval bases, ports and other important installations.

Air Defense (Antimissile Defense) Forces of the Country brought in to participate in the operation, in cooperation with air defense forces and means of the front and of the ships of the fleet, safeguard against enemy air strikes our principal troop and naval groupings, naval bases, ports, and other installations located on the coast, coastal sea lanes, and also amphibious landing forces and means while they are embarking, and -- depending on the range of air defense means -- during the sea transit and landing.

194. In offensive operations on coastal axes, the cooperation of the participating front and fleet forces and of large units of long range aviation and of the Air Defense (Antimissile Defense) Forces of the Country will be coordinated, as a rule, by the Supreme High Command. When operations are being conducted along the shores of a closed sea, as a rule the front commander is charged with organizing cooperation, and the necessary naval forces and long range aviation large units may be operationally subordinated to him. If an entire fleet is subordinated to the front commander while the operation is being conducted, then in this case the fleet commander will be the deputy front commander for the navy. The Supreme High Command determines the time when the fleet becomes operationally subordinate to the front commander and when it is removed from subordination.

When the tasks of seizing islands and of the antilanding defense of islands and naval bases are being accomplished, a portion of the front (army) forces or an entire corps may be subordinated to the fleet commander.

195. In his decision on the offensive operation on a coastal axis, and in addition to the general matters, the front or army commander (corps commander) determines the following jointly with the fleet or flotilla commander (naval large unit commander): the procedure for the delivery of joint strikes by front, fleet, and long range aviation against the enemy on the land and on the sea; the area and time for the landing of landing forces, the forces to be allocated to carry out the landing and to support it; and the procedure to seal off from the sea an enemy grouping pressed to the sea, and the methods of destroying it.

His decision must stipulate the measures for comprehensive support of jointly accomplished tasks and for the organization of cooperation.

196. The cooperation of the formations (large units) of all the branches of the Armed Forces which are participating in the operation usually is organized in support of the front, but in certain stages of the operation it is organized in support of the formations of the particular branch of the Armed Forces accomplishing the main task.

Cooperation among formations (large units) of the branches of the Armed Forces is organized, as a rule, by the front commander with the participation of representatives of the commands of these formations (large units).

Cooperation is achieved by:

-- coordinating tasks and the methods of having them accomplished by all forces participating in the operation;

-- organizing precise mutual recognition among the ground forces, naval forces, aviation, airborne forces, and Air Defense (Antimissile Defense) Forces of the Country.

-- timely mutual informing on the situation on the land, in the air, and at sea;

-- organizing and maintaining stable cooperation communications among the formations (large units) participating in the operation;

-- organizing a unified system of warning on the air enemy and by coordinating the actions of all air defense forces and means when repelling the strikes of enemy air attack means;

-- implementing, on the basis of a unified plan, measures for the comprehensive support of the operation (battle);

-- preliminary special and joint training of the troops (naval forces) and staffs participating in the operation (battle).

197. The defeat of an enemy ground forces grouping in an offensive operation (battle) on a coastal axis can be carried out by cutting it off from other forces, pressing it to the sea, and destroying it in cooperation with naval forces. In doing so, the main attack is delivered in a sector considerably removed from the coast and is directed toward the sea. Secondary attacks are delivered along the coast or near it for the purpose of splintering and simultaneously destroying the enemy grouping.

At times it may prove more advantageous to deliver the main attack along the seacoast, throw back the main forces of the enemy grouping from the coast, cut them off from seaborne supply bases, disrupt their cooperation with naval forces, and destroy them in concert with the adjacent front (army) or independently.

198. The fulfilment of the tasks assigned to a front or army (corps) frequently requires the landing of amphibious and airborne landing forces, this landing being carried out by ground forces jointly with naval forces and aviation. In an offensive operation (battle) on a coastal axis, amphibious landing forces are employed to accomplish the following tasks: to assist the troops on the offensive in encircling and destroying individual enemy groupings and also in seizing naval bases, ports, and other key installations on the coast; to capture small islands; to delay the movement of enemy operational reserves to the front line; and to seize missile launching sites, airfields, and nuclear weapons depots in coastal areas.

Amphibious landing operations

199. Amphibious landing operations are carried out for the purpose of seizing large islands, a group of islands, straits

zones, or key coastal areas and naval bases. They are carried out through the joint efforts of a front and fleet in cooperation with large units of the Strategic Rocket Forces, the Air Forces, and the Air Defense (Antimissile Defense) Forces of the Country.

Success in an amphibious landing operation is ensured by: planning it comprehensively and meticulously; destroying with timeliness the enemy's nuclear weapons, aircraft, and naval forces in the theater of military operations; reliably neutralizing his defense in the landing areas; coordinating the actions of all forces and means engaged in the operation; having the airborne and amphibious landing forces exploit with timeliness the results of the nuclear strikes delivered against the enemy; high rates of speed in the embarkation, sea transit, and debarkation of the landing force troops and by their resolute actions for the final defeat of the enemy and seizure of his vitally important areas; and reliably safeguarding landing force troops and naval forces against enemy strikes from the sea and from the air.

200. Combat actions in an amphibious landing operation include: the delivery of nuclear strikes against the enemy's nuclear attack means, antilanding defense forces, reserves, and other important targets; the landing of airborne landing forces, the battle for the beachhead, and the landing of the amphibious landing force; the accomplishment of tasks on shore by landing force troops after landing.

Simultaneously with this we carry out the neutralization and destruction of enemy ship and aircraft groupings posing a threat to the landing force and to its supporting naval forces.

As a rule, in an amphibious landing operation the principal efforts are concentrated on destroying the enemy's antilanding defense forces in the landing areas as well as his aircraft carrier groupings opposing the landing.

201. Depending on the composition of the landing force, the tasks assigned to it, the availability of assault transports, the nature of the enemy's defense, the possibility of reliably neutralizing this defense, and the military-geographic conditions of the theater, an amphibious landing can be carried out in one area or in several. The landing area usually includes several

landing sectors and each landing sector can have several landing points. Within the confines of each landing area, landing force troops, naval forces, and aircraft wage a battle for the beachhead, which is organized by the commander of the landing ship forces.

An amphibious landing force can be landed on an unprepared shore, in ports, or simultaneously on the shore and in enemy ports utilizing special landing ships and transports.

In doing so, the landing can be carried out:

-- by the "shore-to-shore" method, without transferring troops from transports to landing craft;

-- by the combined method, whereby the first echelon of the landing force is landed by the "shore-to-shore" method and the second echelon by the "ship-to-shore" method with the troops transferring from transports to landing craft.

Under favorable hydrometeorological conditions ground forces subunits and units can make assault crossings of straits and of limited expanses of sea on their own amphibious landing means.

202. The amphibious landing force usually is landed in several echelons, their number and composition depending on the tasks assigned, the landing conditions, and the availability of amphibious landing means.

The task of first-echelon troops is to capture sectors of the shore in cooperation with the airborne landing forces or independently, to develop the offensive into the depth, and to support the landing and deployment of succeeding echelons. The second and succeeding echelons of the landing force are employed to build up the efforts of the first echelon and achieve the final goal of the operation.

Airborne landing forces are used to seize and hold a shore zone in the area (areas) of the amphibious landing, to bar enemy reserves from approaching the amphibious landing sectors, and also to seize important areas and objectives on enemy territory.

In an amphibious landing operation, rocket troops of the front and armies destroy the enemy's nuclear attack means, neutralize his antilanding defense, destroy reserves, aircraft on airfields, and control posts, demolish naval bases and ports, and destroy other important targets.

In an amphibious landing operation, the front air army combats the enemy's nuclear attack means and aircraft, participates in neutralizing the antilanding defense, supports the actions of the amphibious landing force during the landing and the battle on shore, and, in cooperation with Air Defense (Antimissile Defense) Forces of the Country, front air defense troops, and fleet air defense forces and means, it safeguards the landing force troops and the landing ship forces against enemy air attacks.

203. In an amphibious landing operation, the fleet organizes the embarkation of troops into assault transports and provides them with transportation by sea; it carries out the landing of the amphibious landing force on the enemy shore; covers the landing force against enemy strikes from the sea and participates in safeguarding it against air strikes in the embarkation areas, during sea transit, and while landing; makes passages in antilanding obstacles in and under the water; safeguards ground forces subunits making assault crossings of water obstacles on their own amphibious means; supports landing force troops while they are accomplishing their tasks on shore; and handles the supplying by sea of the troops after landing and evacuates the wounded.

Submarines are used independently or in conjunction with fleet aviation, primarily in order to destroy groupings of enemy surface ships and submarines at sea and to bar them from breaking through to the landing ship detachments. Missile submarines can be used to deliver strikes against enemy naval forces in bases. Furthermore, submarines can conduct reconnaissance and land sabotage and reconnaissance groups on the enemy shore.

Fleet aviation, independently and jointly with long range aviation and submarines, and -- in certain cases -- in cooperation with missile ships and coastal missile units of the fleet, destroys enemy ship groupings at sea and in bases, seeks out and destroys enemy submarines, and reconnoiters enemy naval

forces.

Surface ships are employed for the close escort of assault transports and coverage of landing ship detachments against enemy attacks during sea transit, for defense of the assault transports and landing craft in the landing areas, for support of minesweeping on the movement route of the landing force and in the landing areas, for leading of groups of amphibious tanks and armored personnel carriers, and for support of landing force troops while they are landing and accomplishing their tasks on shore.

Landing ships and specially equipped transports are used to transport the troops, combat equipment, and materiel reserves of the landing force.

Coastal missile and artillery large units and units of the fleet are called upon to cover the troop concentration areas and landing points of the landing force against enemy surface ship attacks from the sea.

Naval infantry units operate as part of the forward detachments of the first echelon of the amphibious landing force, fulfilling the tasks of capturing beachheads on the enemy shore and supporting the landing of the first echelon of the amphibious landing force.

204. Nuclear weapons are used in an amphibious landing operation to destroy the enemy's nuclear attack means, to rout his aviation and ship groupings, to neutralize his antilanding defenses, and to disrupt his system of control.

Naval forces use nuclear weapons to destroy enemy ship groupings posing a threat to the landing force.

As a rule, front missile large units (units) and front aviation neutralize enemy antilanding defenses in the debarkation areas.

In certain areas, naval forces can also deliver nuclear strikes in order to neutralize the main centers of resistance in the enemy's antilanding defense system.

205. Specially detailed naval forces cover the landing force during sea transit against enemy surface ship strikes. In accomplishing this task, naval actions can be supported by front aviation large units and, in ocean theaters, by long range aviation large units.

Air defense in the concentration areas of the landing force troops, in their embarkation points, in ship anchorages, and in the forming-up areas of the landing ship detachments is implemented by forces and means of the front and fleet air defense troops and of the Air Defense (Antimissile Defense) Forces of the Country.

Landing ship detachments in sea transit and during the landing are safeguarded against enemy air strikes by fleet shipboard means and landing force troop means, and by the actions of fighter aviation of the front air army and of the Air Defense (Antimissile Defense) Forces of the Country to the full flight radius of the aircraft.

As the troops of the first echelon of the landing force land, surface-to-air missile units are deployed and fighter aviation units are rebased to airfields captured from the enemy or prepared by landing force troops.

206. As a rule, an amphibious landing operation is organized and carried out by the front commander; in this case the fleet commander is his deputy for the naval element. In certain cases, a fleet commander may be charged with control over an amphibious landing operation.

The following are subordinated to the front commander;

-- the landing ship forces commanders, who are responsible for organizing the embarkation, the sea transit, and the landing of the landing force troops in the designated areas;

-- the amphibious and airborne landing forces commanders, who are responsible for the fulfilment of the tasks on shore by the landing forces.

The naval forces and cooperating large units of long range aviation which safeguard the sea transit and landing of the

amphibious landing force against enemy strikes from the sea operate under the direct control of the fleet commander.

Commanders of naval large units are appointed as landing ship forces commanders. To them are subordinated:

-- the landing ship detachment commanders, who are responsible for the safety and timeliness of the sea transit of the assault transports and also for the landing of landing force troops on the shore;

-- the commanders of the ship large units which support the landing of landing force troops on the shore and their actions on shore;

-- the commander of the offshore defense force, who organizes the antisubmarine, antimine, and antimotorboat defense as well as the dispersed anchorage and the method of movement of the assault transports in the landing area;

-- the commander of the landing base (in those areas where one is established), who organizes the unloading of the landing force's equipment and cargo, and its distribution, protection, and forwarding according to destination;

-- the commander of the hydrographic detachment, who is responsible for the navigational-hydrographic and hydrometeorological support of the crossing and the battle for the beachhead, and also the commanders of other special subunits (emergency rescue detachment, jamming groups, and others).

The commander of the large unit (unit) of ground forces which is landing in the capacity of an amphibious landing force is subordinated to the landing ship commander from the time the embarkation order is received until the landing of the main forces of the first echelon of the landing force is concluded.

The command post of the landing ship forces is positioned on a ship having the communications means necessary to control the forces subordinated to him during the sea transit and during the battle for the beachhead.

The commander of the large unit of ground forces which is landing in the capacity of an amphibious landing force is located on the same ship with the landing ship forces commander and transfers to the shore after the landing of the main forces of the first echelon of the landing force.

207. Preparing an amphibious landing operation includes, in addition to taking the usual measures: concentrating transport and landing means; engineer preparation of embarkation points and transport means; moving landing force troops to the areas of embarkation (loading) onto transport means; drilling the troops in rapid embarkation (loading) onto transport means, in landing onto the shore, and in the conduct of rapid offensive actions.

208. When assessing and calculating enemy capabilities, it is necessary to determine: the grouping of antilanding defense forces and means in the landing area and above all, the enemy's capabilities of using nuclear and chemical weapons for strikes against the landing force; the navigational-hydrographic and military-topographic conditions in terms of the convenience for amphibious and airborne landing forces to land and conduct a battle on the shore; the composition and disposition of enemy groupings of surface ships, submarines, and aircraft, and their capabilities of delivering strikes against the landing force in the embarkation points, during sea transit, and in the landing areas.

209. When assessing and calculating the use of their own forces, the front and fleet commanders, together with the commanders of the amphibious and airborne landing forces, will determine: the nature of the actions of the amphibious and airborne landing forces to accomplish the tasks on the shore; the areas and sectors for the landing of the amphibious landing force; the landing areas of airborne landing forces, the times and duration of the landings on each of these axes; the number and disposition of the landing ships in the fleet's complement, and also the number of merchant fleet transports which can be used to transport the landing force; the method of landing the amphibious landing force; the procedure and time period for embarkation of the amphibious landing force onto the assault transports; the emplaning airfields of the airborne landing force and the times when it is to be ready for takeoff; the composition of the landing force's escorting and covering forces during sea

transit and in the landing areas; the procedure for the sea transit of the landing force, and also the forces and means to neutralize the enemy's antilanding defense system and to support the troops after landing; the embarkation points of the landing force troops, the procedure for concentrating assault transports and escorting and covering ships at these points; the actions of naval forces to destroy enemy ship groupings and submarines; the organization of communications, observation, identification, and warning; and the measures for all types of support for the landing force.

210. Based on his understanding of the assigned task, the conclusions drawn from the assessment of the situation, and the calculations made about the capabilities of the enemy and of his own forces, the front commander (fleet commander) makes a decision on the conduct of the amphibious landing operation, and in accordance with it, the front (fleet) staff works out the operational directive (combat order).

The operational directive (combat order) specifies:

-- the deductions obtained from an assessment of the situation and of the enemy's antilanding defense;

-- the goal and concept for conducting the landing operation;

-- the forces, composition, and tasks of the amphibious landing force, the area and time it is to be embarked on assault transports, the landing areas and landing time;

-- the forces, composition, and tasks of the airborne landing force, the departure area for the landing operation, and the drop (landing) time and area;

-- the tasks of the navy to support the amphibious landing;

-- the tasks to be accomplished by rocket troops, the targets to be hit, the number of nuclear warheads to be expended and their yield;

-- the tasks of the air army, the nuclear warheads and flight resources to be allocated;

-- the time periods and procedure for concentration in the embarkation and emplaning areas and the departure area for the landing of the troops of the amphibious and airborne landings, as well as other special instructions;

-- control -- the commanders of the amphibious and airborne landing forces, of the landing ship forces, of the escorting and covering forces, the locations of command posts, and deputies.

211. The grouping of forces and means during sea transit and when landing includes:

-- the landing ship forces of the amphibious landing force, made up of the landing ship detachments with the troops to be landed, and the escorts for them;

-- the forces to neutralize the enemy's antilanding defense;

-- the forces covering the landing force during sea transit and in the landing area;

-- the reserves.

212. An amphibious landing operation is planned by tasks. The substance of the tasks, depending on the situation, can be:

-- the destruction and neutralization of the enemy's nuclear attack means, his main troop, aircraft, and naval groupings;

-- the loading of troops on transport means and their sea transit;

-- the airlift of the airborne landing force;

-- the landing of the first echelon of the amphibious landing force and the drop of the airborne landing force, the destruction of the main groupings of the first echelon of the enemy's antilanding defense;

-- the landing of the succeeding echelons of the amphibious landing force, the development of the offensive into the depth, the destruction of approaching reserves, and the achievement of the assigned goals of the operation.

213. The plan for an amphibious landing operation is worked out by the front staff with the fleet staff participating. The unified plan of the amphibious landing operation defines the cooperation of all formations (large units) of the branches of the Armed Forces participating in the operation. Special attention is devoted to coordinating the delivery of nuclear strikes against the enemy with various means, to a most precise allocation of tasks among the forces of the front, fleet, and aviation; to ensuring that the operation is prepared covertly, and to achieving surprise.

Based on the decision adopted and on the amphibious landing operation plan, the fleet commander assigns combat tasks to the large units and units of the fleet, and the fleet staff works out the plan of actions for fleet forces in the amphibious landing operation.

214. The cooperation of the forces in an amphibious landing operation is carried out in support of the landing force troops to be landed on the main axis. The front commander coordinates the actions of the landing force with the actions of the fleet, aviation, Air Defense (Antimissile Defense) Forces of the Country, and with the nuclear strikes in order to exploit their results with timeliness, and he also stipulates the cooperation procedure between the landing ship forces and the forces ensuring the neutralization of the enemy's antilanding defense; between the forces operating in the various landing areas; between the amphibious and the airborne landing forces; and between the landing force troops that have landed and the forces supporting their actions on shore.

When organizing cooperation between the landing ship forces and the forces ensuring the neutralization of the enemy's antilanding defense, we coordinate the targets, delivery times, and types of bursts of the nuclear strikes as well as the targets for the employment of chemical weapons; the procedure to change and pinpoint the targets to be destroyed or neutralized; the signals for the initiation of the strike against installations of the enemy's antilanding defense; the procedure to inform, warn, and identify one's own forces at sea and on shore, and also the methods of marking the forward edge of the landing force troops on the offensive.

When organizing cooperation between units of the amphibious and airborne landing forces, provisions are made: to refine the tasks, areas, and times for the landing of the airborne landing forces; to coordinate the actions of the airborne landing forces and amphibious landing force units by axes, and also to coordinate the actions of forces supporting the landing and offensive of the amphibious and the airborne landing forces, particularly those employing nuclear warheads; and to establish a system of identifying one's own forces.

For the purposes of implementing cooperation between the troops that have been landed and the forces supporting their actions on the shore, we coordinate: the installations and forces of the enemy's antilanding defense, including his reserves, which are to be destroyed or neutralized; the procedure for the use of nuclear warheads to disrupt enemy counterattacks and support the offensive of landing force troops; the organization of target indication and of the system for reporting the results of the actions of supporting forces and of landing force units; and the procedure to identify one's own forces.

215. The fleet commander organizes cooperation between the landing ship forces and the forces providing them with cover against enemy strikes from the sea. In doing so, provisions are made: to coordinate the operating areas of submarines and surface ships with respect to the landing ship detachments they are covering and to the most dangerous groupings of enemy naval forces; to maintain the readiness of fleet aviation and coastal missile units of the fleet and to establish the procedure for calling upon them; to establish the procedure for having covering forces deliver strikes against groupings of enemy naval forces; and to coordinate the actions of antisubmarine forces with the movements of landing ship detachments.

216. Reconnaissance in an amphibious landing operation is conducted by front and fleet forces according to a unified plan and is focused on discovering: the enemy's nuclear attack means, his antilanding defense system, the composition and locations of reserves, ship and aircraft groupings, and coastal missile units which can put up opposition to the landing of the landing force; the antilanding obstacles in the water and on the shore; the condition of the ports and their equipment, and also the navigational-hydrographic conditions in the amphibious landing

areas (the depth, variations in sea level, presence of navigational hazards, conspicuous landmarks, beaches, berths, topography of the terrain, etc.).

217. The troops are moved out to the waiting areas ahead of time, before initiating embarkation onto transport means.

Waiting areas are chosen at a distance from the embarkation points that ensures the dispersed and concealed disposition of troops and rapid movement of them out for embarkation.

Concentrating transport and amphibious landing means and combat ships in the embarkation points is effected immediately prior to the embarkation, with the observance of all camouflage measures.

218. The conduct of an amphibious landing operation begins the moment troops embark on transport means.

The embarkation of troops and loading of combat equipment and materiel reserves onto assault transports is carried out in the shortest time possible, dispersed in several areas and points, with observance of secrecy requirements, and mainly at night; and it is completed immediately before the landing force puts out to sea.

Embarkation and loading is carried out taking into account the echeloning of the landing force and the time each of the landing ship detachments begins the crossing.

The embarkation procedure must ensure the capability of a rapid landing and the necessary sequence of committing landing force troops to battle; that is, the sequence of embarkation of the troop units onto vessels must be the reverse of the order of their landing. When embarking, the integrity of the tactical troop subunits must be maintained.

The embarkation points of the landing force troops and the anchorages of the transport means and combat ships must be reliably safeguarded against air attack means and against strikes by enemy submarines and surface ships. Exit channels are swept for mines.

219. The departure time of a landing force is determined on the basis of the projected time the landing is to begin, the duration of the sea transit, and the deployment of the landing ship forces, with an allowance made for a time reserve and camouflage requirements.

The departure of landing ship detachments from embarkation points is safeguarded by all types of defense and protection, which are to be implemented by the forces of naval bases and also by forces allocated for the close escort of landing ship detachments.

By the time landing ship detachments begin to depart from the embarkation points, the submarines, and then the surface ships, assigned to cover the landing force, are to have completed deployment on the threatened axes.

The cruising formation of the landing force during sea transit must conform to the landing sequence of the landing force troops that has been adopted for each of the landing areas and on each of the landing sectors.

Ship large units intended to safeguard the landing of the landing force are positioned within the cruising formation of the landing force so as to cover the landing ship detachments against attacks by enemy surface ships and aircraft.

The landing ship detachments of diversionary and auxiliary landing forces usually proceed with a lead on the main forces.

By the time the landing ship detachments of the first echelon are approaching the landing areas and sectors, any possible straggling by individual landing ship detachments must be corrected and the cruising formation of the landing force must conform to the sequence specified for the actions of the forces as they land on each axis.

During the sea transit of the landing force, individual ground forces subunits, with appropriate support by ships of the fleet, can carry out assault crossings of small water obstacles on their own amphibious means. Their arrival at the shore must take place simultaneously with that of the forward detachments of the first echelon.

220. Actions to destroy enemy groupings which pose a threat to the safety of the landing ship detachments during sea transit are initiated even before the landing force embarks on the ships. During this period large units of front rocket troops and front aviation deliver strikes against enemy missile sites, airfields, and naval bases.

During the sea transit of the landing force, large units (units) of rocket troops, missile ships, long range aviation, and front aviation deliver strikes using nuclear and chemical warheads against newly discovered missile sites of the enemy, groupings of his forces, and important defense installations in the landing areas of the amphibious and airborne landing forces.

Naval missile-carrying aircraft and submarines, with large units of front (long range) aviation participating, deliver strikes against enemy ship groupings while the landing force is in transit at sea, taking into consideration the position of landing ship detachments as well as the reconnaissance data on the location, composition, and nature of the actions of enemy groupings.

221. The most expedient method of neutralizing the enemy's antilanding defense before initiating the landing is to deliver nuclear strikes against the enemy's troop groupings in the landing area and against his reserves. In doing so, it is necessary to take into account that the enemy's missile units and atomic artillery must be neutralized before the landing ship detachments arrive within their zone of action. Nuclear strikes against enemy antilanding defense installations positioned at the water's edge in the landing zone are delivered with allowance made to ensure the safety of the landing force troops approaching the shore.

To destroy enemy installations in the landing area, especially those situated at the water's edge, air bursts are used. Ground nuclear bursts are used only against installations located in the depth, when favorable meteorological conditions are present. Chemical weapons are used against enemy reserves.

222. As a rule, the landing of an amphibious landing force is preceded by the landing (drop) of an airborne landing force. The landing of the troops of an amphibious landing force is

initiated upon a signal from the landing ship commander. To seize the enemy shore and create conditions favoring the actions of the main complement of the first echelon of the landing force, immediately after the nuclear strikes forward detachments are first landed rapidly upon the enemy shore from helicopters or landing ships. At the same time, ground forces subunits, carrying out an assault crossing on their own amphibious means, move out to the shore. Specially designated air and ship large units and units support the actions of the forward detachments on the shore.

The landing of the first and succeeding echelons of an amphibious landing force is safeguarded by sweeping the approach channels for mines and by clearing engineer antilanding obstacles in the water and on the shore.

The engineer units and hydrographic, hydrometeorological, medical, and other special service subunits which are landed with the forward detachments, begin to prepare landing points and to organize landing bases in order to support the approach and landing of succeeding echelons of the landing force and the unloading of combat equipment and materiel.

223. Immediately following the forward detachments, the remaining complement of the first echelon lands without bunching up in the coastal zones and, exploiting favorable conditions created by the nuclear strikes, deploys from the march and advances without delay for the purpose of fulfilling the assigned tasks.

The ships which have come for support of the landing force safeguard the landing and offensive of the troops of the first echelon of the landing force in cooperation with front rocket troops large units and units and front aviation. The fleet, with specially allocated forces, continues to cover landing ship detachments of the first and succeeding echelons against enemy strikes from the sea.

Airborne landing forces conduct combat actions, destroying opposing enemy troops jointly with the amphibious landing force, holding on to important lines, and preventing reserves from breaking through to the landing area.

224. Troops of the second and succeeding echelons of the landing force begin to land immediately after the first echelon completes landing. As the landing proceeds, the main forces deploy from the march and without delay rush forward for the purpose of speedily seizing key objectives on enemy territory. The buildup of the landing force can be carried out, depending on the situation, by additionally allocated troops transported by sea and by air.

As the main forces of the amphibious landing force go over to the offensive, the fleet covers troops on the landing beachhead against enemy attacks from the sea and ensures the delivery by sea of reinforcements and of all types of materiel to the landing force, the evacuation of wounded, and also supports the actions of landing force troops on the shore.

Characteristics of offensive operations in mountain, desert, and northern areas

225. Offensive operations conducted in mountain, desert, and northern areas, have, together with characteristics which are distinctive to operations in each of these areas, a number of features in common. Of the latter, these are the principal ones: the offensive is conducted on separate axes which make it hard to maneuver and deploy troop groupings; wider zones of actions and lesser densities of forces and means; and difficulty in preparing departure areas for the offensive and in setting up aircraft basing areas. Natural terrain conditions in these areas, as a rule, facilitate the organization of a defense and make offensive actions difficult.

However, the use of nuclear weapons allows us to inflict heavy losses on enemy groupings defending, as a rule, the most important areas and thereby deprive the enemy of the advantages of a defense and create the necessary conditions for the successful conduct of an offensive. Along with this, the limited opportunities to disperse and shelter troops increase their vulnerability to nuclear attack means, complicate the organization of their protection against these means, and require more reliable security for the troops against enemy air strikes.

When operating under special terrain conditions, it is considerably more difficult to maneuver forces and means, and

therefore the maneuvering of fire will be of great importance.

Characteristic of troop control is the need to simultaneously control the combat actions of several groupings on the offensive on isolated axes that are considerably removed from one another.

To conduct operations in mountain, desert, and northern areas requires troops to be specially organized and trained and requires them to be equipped with special combat equipment, transport means, supply items, personal equipment, and clothing in conformity with the specific geographic and climatic conditions of the combat actions area.

226. In mountain areas offensive operations are conducted under the conditions of: very rugged terrain relief with the presence of mountain masses which are varied in elevation, vegetation cover, and climatic conditions; dissociated operational axes; a poorly developed network of airfields and roads and difficulty of movement off the roads; abrupt changes in the weather and in the behavior of rivers; the restrictive effect of mountains on the operation of radiotechnical means and also on the spread of the shock waves and thermal radiation associated with a nuclear burst; the possibility of creating mountain landslides and obstructions with a nuclear burst; and the prolonged stagnation of toxic chemical agents in ravines and deep valleys.

A front (army) offensive operation and a corps battle in mountain areas are characterized by an intense struggle for travel routes and road junctions, mountain passes and passages, inhabited localities, and other key areas and objectives. An offensive in the mountains is developed in valleys, along roads and mountain ridges, and on mountain plateaus.

227. As a rule, a front offensive operation in the mountains is conducted on several dissociated axes.

The depth of an offensive operation and the rates of advance will depend to a significant degree on the nature of the mountain area, the presence of axes accessible for troop actions, and the season of the year. As a rule, an offensive operation in mountain areas will be planned to a lesser depth and will be conducted at

lower rates of advance than in flat theaters of military operations.

228. The axis of the main attack is selected taking into account the capacity of the area of terrain of the forthcoming offensive, the possible results of the use of nuclear weapons, the accessibility of the area for actions by the principal branch arms, as well as the materiel and technical support conditions. The same demands are also imposed when selecting the axes of other attacks. Sometimes these attacks may be delivered in a zone of difficult terrain for the purpose of covertly breaking out to the enemy's flank and rear and achieving surprise.

229. The operational disposition of troops in an offensive in mountain areas is characterized by the establishment of several groupings along axes depending on the availability of through roads. Taking into account the difficulty of maneuvering troops across the front, we allocate to each of the axes that amount of forces and means which will ensure that the assigned task is fulfilled to the entire depth of the operation or which will ensure the capture of an area permitting us to carry out extensive maneuvering actions.

The troop grouping on the main axis may consist of several echelons or of a single echelon and strong reserves.

230. In an offensive operation conducted in the mountains, nuclear weapons must be used on the decisive axes to destroy the enemy's nuclear attack means, principal ground forces groupings, tactical aircraft, and his powerful strongpoints and centers of resistance blocking the routes of the troops on the offensive.

In certain cases, when it is foreseen that several passes, tunnels, and narrow mountain defiles will not be used, nuclear strikes can be delivered against them for the purpose of creating obstructions and landslides and containing the movement of enemy troops.

When using nuclear weapons in the mountains, it is necessary to take into account the special characteristics of the terrain relief and the nature of the mountain rocks and soil so as to prevent the formation of zones of strong radioactive contamination, obstructions, landslides, and forest fires capable

of hindering the actions of one's own troops.

Chemical weapons can be used against enemy troops defending passes, mountain passages, and road junctions. When using chemical weapons it is necessary to take into account the possibility that contaminated air will persist for an extended period of time in defiles, ravines, and forests, and also that it will flow along ravines and valleys to our troop positions.

231. Front (army) rocket troops are used, as a rule, on the axis of the main attack. When it is impossible for nuclear means to maneuver to other axes, the rocket troop large units can be used by battalions on each axis.

Front aviation, in addition to fulfilling conventional tasks, is used to seek and destroy those targets which are difficult for other means to locate and destroy, and it is also used to deliver materiel and technical means to troops operating in areas that are difficult to traverse and far away, to evacuate wounded, and to provide communications between separate troop groupings. In a number of cases, aviation large units or units may be detached and operationally subordinated to the commander of an army (corps) on the offensive on a separate axis.

In mountain conditions artillery is employed in a decentralized manner. Troops on the offensive must be reinforced with howitzer artillery and mortars.

Tank large units are used on axes accessible to their actions, primarily to develop the offensive and seize key enemy areas and installations in the depth.

During an offensive in mountains, airborne landing forces are used to take mountain passes, passages, road junctions, and to capture bridges for the purpose of assisting the troops in rapidly negotiating mountain ranges, and also to seize missile launching sites and airfields and to disorganize the enemy's control and the work of his rear services. To accomplish these tasks, we primarily use tactical airborne forces landed from helicopters.

When engineer troops are supporting a troop offensive in the mountains, they accomplish the following additional tasks: clear

roads of landslides and provide bypasses around defiles; lay and maintain crossings over mountain rivers and passages through deep obstacles; support the movement of troops on steep ascents and descents; consolidate passes, mountain passages, and road junctions captured by the troops; and place obstacles and carry out demolitions on paths and roads which lead the enemy into the flanks and rear of our attacking troops.

232. Air defense is organized by axes of troop actions. Its principal efforts are concentrated on covering rocket troops, the main grouping of the front or army (corps), and also key routes of travel, defiles, bridges, crossings, mountain passes, passages, and other places where the bunching up of troops and transport is unavoidable.

Surface-to-air missile units usually operate along roads and accessible axes.

233. The deployment of troops to go over to an offensive will be complicated by a limited road network and by difficult terrain. In this connection, the times in which groupings can achieve readiness to go over to an offensive on separate axes may differ. Attack groupings will frequently deploy while in immediate contact with the enemy.

234. A front (army) offensive operation in mountain areas may begin on the main axis with the delivery of a nuclear strike against the enemy with the troops subsequently going over to the offensive. On other axes, the going over to the offensive by the troops may be carried out only with the support of artillery fire and aviation either simultaneously with the offensive on the main axis or at a different time. On these axes an offensive may begin with the delivery of an attack on the flank and rear of the enemy's main grouping after covertly enveloping or encircling it over difficult terrain.

During an offensive it is necessary to avoid bunching up troops and equipment, to prevent major forces from getting drawn into defiles, passages, and ravines, and to reliably safeguard the flanks of the attacking troops against possible enemy attacks.

235. Developing an offensive at high rates of advance is ensured by skilfully using nuclear and chemical weapons and conventional means of destruction, by destroying the enemy's nuclear attack means with timeliness, by rapidly routing his groupings which are occupying key positions, by landing airborne landing forces, and by using enveloping actions with large units and units.

Second echelons and reserves are committed in order to intensify efforts on the decisive axes and to destroy enemy groupings that have been cut off. Furthermore, reserves can be used to eliminate isolated garrisons and centers of resistance. It is advisable to commit tank large units to the engagement after the mountain sectors that are difficult of access have been overcome and forward units have emerged into wide valleys and mountain plateaus.

The encirclement of separate enemy groupings and their destruction in detail is achieved by the capture of passes, mountain passages, and road junctions in their rear, by attacks of airborne landing forces and a simultaneous rapid offensive of troops on the main axes.

236. When organizing the rear services and materiel, technical, and medical support for front (army) troops in an offensive operation in the mountains, it is necessary to establish beforehand increased reserves of materiel with the troops and in depots; to provide combat and auxiliary equipment with means which increase their cross-country mobility and to reinforce troops with evacuation means on each axis; to provide troops with special supply items; and to use helicopters, cross-country vehicles, and transport aircraft extensively to deliver materiel and to evacuate the wounded.

A mobile army base is situated, as a rule, in separate groups on several axes. Missile technical units are situated in areas which provide the best conditions for the delivery of missiles to front (army) missile units.

237. In desert areas, when preparing and conducting offensive operations, it is necessary to consider: the possibility of creating more extensive zones of radioactive contamination of the terrain with ground and low-altitude aerial

nuclear bursts; the difficult trafficability of sand dunes, wet salt flats, and some sectors of stony deserts; the difficulty of providing troops with water, fuel, and construction materials, the absence of natural concealment and the difficulty of camouflaging troops; the limited local resources; the harmful effect of sand and of sand dust on the operation of combat equipment and of unfavorable climatic conditions on personnel.

238. Offensive operations in deserts are conducted primarily to capture key economic areas and centers which, as a rule, are located in oases and in places well provided with water. The troop offensive is developed by separate axes leading to these areas and to major inhabited localities.

The depth of offensive operations in desert areas depends on the distance to the principal objectives of operational and strategic importance to the enemy; and, as a rule, this depth will be greater than that under ordinary conditions.

The choice of axes of the offensive and the allocation of necessary forces and means to each axis are determined by the tasks, by the maneuvering conditions, by the nature of the grouping and actions of the enemy, and also by the possibilities of supplying troops with water. Troop groupings must possess operational independence. Individual large units may accomplish independent tasks which are of operational importance, and their actions will be developed to a great depth.

239. Nuclear weapons are used to destroy the enemy's nuclear attack means and aircraft and to hit his main troop groupings and reserves advancing to the flanks of the troops on the offensive as well as his key rear services installations. In doing so we must consider the nature of the soil in the burst area, the weather conditions, and especially the direction and velocity of the wind so that we do not, by creating strong radioactive contamination, immobilize the combat actions of our troops on the offensive or contaminate sources of water with radioactive substances.

When using chemical weapons we should keep in mind that in deserts the persistence of toxic chemical agents is considerably reduced.

240. Front and army rocket troops are employed on the main axis. Depending on the capacity of the axes and the conditions for the relocation of rocket troops during the offensive, front and army missile large units and units can be employed by battalion.

Aviation, in addition to fulfilling its usual tasks in an offensive in the desert, can be brought in to deliver strikes against troops massed in oases and in the vicinity of sources of water, to destroy the enemy's oil pipelines, to supply one's own troops with fuel, water, and other means, and also to evacuate the wounded and sick. In a number of cases air large units can be placed in operational subordination to commanders of armies, corps, or divisions operating on separate axes distant from one another.

Tank large units, as a rule, are used to deliver surprise and crushing attacks against the enemy's flank and also to break out to the deep rear area of his main grouping and seize operationally important objectives.

Airborne landing forces can be used in desert areas to seize and destroy enemy nuclear attack means, to assist the troops in encircling the main enemy grouping, and to seize road junctions, airfields, separate oases and sources of water in the enemy rear.

The air defense concentrates its main efforts on covering groupings of rocket troops, the main groupings of the front (army), supply bases, main road junctions, oases, and sources of water. The air defense is organized by axes of troop actions.

Additional tasks of the engineer troops are: to reconnoiter sources of water and obtain water; to set up and maintain water supply points and monitor the quality of the water; to construct roads and lay cross-country tracks on terrain sectors that are difficult of access and equip them with markers and signs; and to camouflage missile sites, control posts, and other important installations.

When troops are operating in steppes and deserts they usually have to be reinforced with field water supply units and means of transporting, purifying, and storing water.

241. The principal form of action of troops on the offensive in desert areas is to attack the enemy's flanks and rear. In those instances when it is not possible to envelop the enemy from the flanks, or when such a move will involve a loss of time, frontal attacks can be delivered with the use of nuclear weapons and other means of mass destruction against opposing enemy groupings followed by a rapid development of the offensive into the depth.

Troop efforts are built up on the decisive axes, first of all by maneuvering nuclear means, and also by committing second echelons and reserves to the engagement. Second echelons and reserves may be committed to the engagement on one or several axes.

Taking into account summertime climatic conditions, offensive operations in deserts should be conducted using nighttime extensively.

Special attention must be devoted to securing the flanks of the troops against possible enemy envelopments and outflanking maneuvers.

242. When organizing the rear and materiel, technical, and medical support of an offensive operation in desert areas, it is necessary to provide for: the positioning of rear services units and facilities close to sources of drinking water, careful camouflage of them, and the preparation of engineer works to shelter reserves of materiel and technical means; the organization of motor roads on separate axes and the setting up on them of mobile army bases, front depot branches on the ground, and also technical assistance posts, refueling, medical, rations, and water supply points; the extensive use of military transport aviation to deliver cargo to the troops and evacuate the wounded; the organization of the delivery of water and fuel and strict rationing of their consumption; the allocation of forces and means for the air and ground defense of front (army) depots, transports, and sources of water; and the providing of combat and transport vehicles with means increasing their cross-country capability and with additional fuel and water containers.

Based on the water requirements for drinking, technical needs, and personnel and general decontamination, the deputy

commander for the rear, together with the chief of engineer troops, works out the troop water supply plan, in which provisions are made: for the reconnaissance of sources of water and for the forces and means to be allocated to obtain, purify, store, and deliver water to the troops; for water consumption norms; and for measures to protect and maintain sources of water.

243. In northern areas, when preparing and conducting offensive operations it is necessary to take into account: the great separation of the operational axes and the considerable distances between objectives of operational importance; the difficulties troops have in orienting and camouflaging themselves; the difficulty of access of the terrain and the poorly developed routes of travel, which limit troop maneuvering and lower their rates of advance; the difficult physical geography, soil, and hydrogeology conditions (permafrost, rocky soil, swamps) which hamper engineer preparation of the terrain and the construction of engineer works; the harsh climatic conditions and unstable meteorological conditions; the limited network of airfields and the difficulty of expanding it; the characteristics of the polar day and polar night; the nearness of the magnetic pole and the frequent magnetic and ionospheric storms which adversely affect the operation of radioelectronic equipment and of electrical means of communication and the accuracy of magnetic compass readings; the lack of human habitation in the area, the great remoteness from supply bases, the almost complete absence of fuel in most of the areas, and the difficult transportation conditions.

All of this requires that troops be provided with combat equipment, transport, clothing, and other types of supplies which will enable them to conduct combat actions in northern areas.

244. A front offensive zone in northern areas may encompass one or two strategic axes or an entire theater of military operations. An army (corps) advances on one of the operational axes, and in certain cases an army may also advance on a strategic axis. A division, as a rule, will be given for the offensive a zone which includes one road axis.

The depth of the offensive operation depends on the distance to key operational-strategic installations and areas and on the presence of major natural boundaries and obstacles. The average

rate of advance of troops in northern areas will be lower than is usual, and under favorable conditions it may amount to 40 or 50 kilometers a day.

Organizing a front (army) offensive operation, and also the offensive battle of a corps in northern areas, requires consideration not only of the area as a whole, but also of each axis separately; a greater expenditure of time than is usual in ordinary conditions to prepare the offensive, especially in order to carry out such measures as the preparation of the departure area, the stockpiling of materiel, and the deployment of troops for going over to the offensive.

The most suitable times to conduct offensive operations are the periods: August to September (normal alternation of day and night, more stable temperatures), the beginning of winter (limited depth of snow cover), and February to April (normal alternation of day and night, reliable frozen condition of rivers, lakes, and swamps, hard snow crust, and more stable weather).

245. The main attack by a front or army (corps) usually is delivered in the zone of the most accessible terrain, which allows the troops to rapidly exploit the results of nuclear strikes. It may coincide with the axis of the principal roads leading the troops toward the areas and objectives whose capture achieves the goals of the operation. In certain cases, a corps may deliver the main attack off the roads, in a zone having difficult terrain, in order to come out on the flanks and rear of the enemy's main grouping.

246. As a rule, the operational disposition of a front (army) will consist of a single echelon with strong, multi-purpose reserves. The first echelon will comprise several troop groupings, corresponding to the number of axes. The troop groupings to be formed for the offensive on isolated axes must be capable of independently accomplishing their tasks to the entire depth of the operation. Reserves usually are placed on several axes.

Groupings of rocket troops and artillery are formed with due regard for ensuring the complete independence of the large units and formations operating on dissociated axes.

247. Nuclear weapons are used in northern areas to destroy means of mass destruction, groupings of troops and aircraft, and also important operational and operational-strategic targets, which can have worse consequences for the enemy than under ordinary conditions, since the restoration of demolished installations, the delivery of materiel, and the conduct of measures to eliminate the aftereffects of nuclear strikes will be considerably more difficult.

248. Front and army rocket troops, depending on the situation and the separation between attack axes, can be used by battalions, with their main forces being employed on the main axis.

Tank troops are used in the first echelon on tank-accessible axes. Sometimes, at the beginning of an operation they can be in the reserve or in the second echelon and be committed to the engagement as the troops advance to more accessible sectors of the terrain.

Front aviation will have a greater volume of tasks in an offensive in northern areas owing to the necessity for troops to operate over broader offensive zones and the maneuver limitations of rocket troops and artillery. Military transport aviation and helicopters should be brought in on a large scale to airlift troops. In order to bring aircraft basing nearer to the troops during an offensive operation it is necessary to organize the capture of enemy airfields, to construct new field airfields with metal surfacing, and under winter conditions -- to rapidly set up airfields and landing strips on frozen lakes, rivers, and swamps.

Airborne and -- on coastal axes -- amphibious landing forces can be landed in order to destroy and seize means of mass destruction, to capture airfields, ports, depots and bases, road junctions, inter-lake areas, and other objectives.

249. The rout of the enemy's main forces is achieved by delivering attacks along roads, river valleys, high ground accessible to troop actions with a simultaneous outflanking of enemy groupings from the rear, by landing airborne landing forces on movement routes and amphibious landing forces on coastal axes, and destroying the enemy in detail. Under summer conditions the maneuver of troops can be carried out on waterways using assault

transports. To rout the enemy in northern areas, we attach special importance to the capture of important economic areas and inhabited localities, airfields, road junctions, and travel routes, as well as to the seizure of supply bases.

Negotiating the enemy defense on the main axes of the offensive may involve the necessity of successively demolishing and seizing a system of strongpoints and centers of resistance echeloned to a great depth in a narrow zone.

To neutralize such a defense requires the delivery of a simultaneous massed nuclear strike or a strike with conventional means against key targets, enemy nuclear attack means, and also the successive delivery of strikes against separate targets in the depth as attacking troops approach them.

Success in negotiating the enemy's defense and developing the operation into the depth will depend on skilful execution of envelopments and outflankings of the enemy's flanks, and also on surprise actions by airborne and amphibious landing forces landed in the rear of his main grouping. The principal goal of such actions consists in seizing key positions and in interdicting enemy lines of transportation.

Troop efforts are built up on the main axis first of all by maneuvering nuclear means as well as by committing to the engagement large units from the reserve. Committing large units from the reserve to the engagement in order to build up our efforts requires careful organization. If the commitment to the engagement, due to the conditions of the situation, is done on an axis having a limited capacity, then the large units being committed must arrange their battle formation in several echelons and be committed by leapfrogging the battle formations of first-echelon large units.

250. A distinctive task of the rear services in offensive troop operations in northern areas is to supply them with special clothing, supplies and rations, winter-grade fuels and lubricants, heated tents, heating fuel, and other special materiel and means.

During the operation, military transport aviation, helicopters, sled teams, and sea and river transport must be used

extensively for transportation and evacuation.

Seizing major inhabited localities (cities)

251. During an offensive, as a rule, major inhabited localities (cities) are bypassed by the main groupings of forces on the offensive and blockaded.

In case the inhabited localities (cities) are occupied by major enemy forces which are prepared for a defense and it does not appear possible that they can be seized by using conventional means of destruction, nuclear strikes may be delivered against them.

To seize major inhabited localities we allocate the minimum necessary amount of forces and means from the complement of the first echelon of the troops on the offensive. In case of necessity, they can be reinforced by using reserves or second echelons.

Involving troops in battles to seize major inhabited localities (cities) should be done only in an extreme case, since this may lead to a lowering of the rates of advance and to the troops on the offensive being hit by enemy nuclear weapons.

252. Seizing major inhabited localities is accomplished from the march. During the offensive the front (army) commander concentrates the efforts of the troops and of aviation on preventing major enemy forces from withdrawing to defensive lines prepared immediately around the city and within the city itself and on deflecting them away from the city.

Seizing a city from the march should be carried out by the surprise actions of forward detachments and first-echelon large units in close cooperation with airborne landing forces. Under these conditions, rocket troop and air strikes must concentrate on destroying enemy troops defending on the approaches to the city.

Troops must rapidly capture key urban objectives (government facilities, electric power stations, water pumping installations, radio stations, the telegraph, etc.); their actions must be supported by massed air strikes and powerful artillery fire.

Front (army) troops operating on the flanks of the grouping detailed to seize a major inhabited locality must with a rapid offensive into the depth isolate this inhabited locality from an influx of enemy reserves.

253. In those cases when attacking troops have not succeeded in seizing the major inhabited locality from the march and it is not expedient to demolish it with nuclear weapons, we will undertake to capture it following an appropriate preparation. In this case, the seizure of the city is preceded by a careful reconnaissance for the purpose of more accurately determining the plan of the city, the nature of its buildings, the location of defensive structures and obstacles, the enemy system of fire, the composition and grouping of the enemy garrison, and also the key objectives in the city.

The troops and staffs must be provided with large-scale plans of the city with numbered city blocks and important objectives. These plans must indicate the key buildings, structures, communications lines and stations, airfields, railroad stations, subway lines and stations, and gas mains; and they must also show detailed data on the city's water supply network and electric power stations.

In the decision for capturing the city after deliberate preparations, it will be necessary, first of all, to determine: the axis of the main attack and of the other attacks; the forces and means allocated to operate on these axes and their tasks; the tasks of the rocket troops and aviation; the key objectives whose destruction will deprive the defenders of water, communications, electrical power, and materiel and technical means; the principal objectives which are to be seized; the underground structures which can be used to come out in the enemy's rear; the procedure for and cooperation with tactical landing forces; the tasks of the second echelons and reserves and the time of their commitment to the engagement; the procedure for consolidating captured areas; and the organization of control and communications.

It is advisable to deliver the main attack on the axis which ensures splitting up the main grouping of the enemy's garrison and which ensures the rapid capture of the city's most important objectives, whose seizure disrupts the stability of the city's defense as a whole.

254. The attack on the city should be initiated simultaneously in several sectors on converging axes for the purpose of splintering the enemy defense and destroying the garrison in detail. An attack in a city is characterized by a struggle to capture individual buildings, streets, and blocks. Troop efforts must be concentrated on capturing the principal objectives, strongpoints, and centers of defense on the city's main streets. An attack that has been initiated must be carried out day and night until the entire city is captured.

To give large units and units greater independence, they must be reinforced by artillery and by engineer and chemical units.

To build up efforts and to repel enemy counterattacks and counterthrusts during the battle for the city it is necessary to have strong reserves and to prepare in advance the air strikes and artillery fire against street intersections, squares, parks, bridges, and other city areas where enemy troop movements and concentrations are probable.

255. When a city is being captured without employing nuclear weapons against it, nuclear strikes can be delivered against targets outside the city limits and in particular against the enemy's groupings defending approaches to the city and against his reserves moving forward to reinforce the defending garrison or to deliver counterattacks and counterthrusts.

Chemical weapons are employed to hit the enemy defending the approaches to a city, individual buildings, and centers of defnse in the city, as well as to prevent the maneuvering of his reserves. During an attack in a city primarily non-persistent toxic chemical agents are employed.

In combat to seize a city, aviation fulfils the tasks of destroying the enemy's means of mass destruction, of neutralizing his defense on the approaches to the city and within the city, of routing approaching reserves, and also of covering one's own forces and blockading the city from the air.

When a city is being seized, engineer troops accomplish, in addition to the usual tasks, the following tasks: conduct combat actions as part of the assault groups; ensure the capture,

restoration, and operation of electric power stations and of the water supply system; clear obstructions and barricades; assist the troops in constructing obtacles on the streets and inside buildings; do antiatomic preparation of captured city shelters and tunnels in order to accommodate staffs, communications centers, personnel, and rear services facilities; conduct underground mining combat; and also demolish individual buildings and enemy strongpoints.

256. In the course of the operation, major inhabited localities, against which nuclear strikes have been delivered, will be encountered in the offensive zone of the troops. When organizing combat actions in these cases we must take into account the fact that as a result of nuclear bursts structures and buildings in the city will have been demolished to a considerable degree, many major fires will have broken out, solid obstructions will have been formed, and -- with ground bursts -- radioactively contaminated areas with high levels of radiation will have been formed. Therefore troop actions in a city immediately after nuclear strikes will be considerably hampered, and in certain cases, ruled out completely for an extended time.

257. Troops must rapidly bypass major inhabited localities demolished by nuclear strikes, and when necessary, blockade all exits from them, allocating for this a minimum number of forces and means from the second echelons and reserves.

In case the enemy restores the defenses of a major inhabited locality, follow-up nuclear strikes can be delivered against it.

258. The capture of a major inhabited locality (city), against which a nuclear strike has been delivered, is carried out only after the level of radiation has dropped and then over those streets or axes where the dose of irradiation of personnel will be minimal.

In the course of capturing an inhabited locality, we must continuously conduct carefully organized radiation, chemical, and bacteriological reconnaissance and implement monitoring of the radioactive irradiation of personnel.

259. To protect troops against means of mass destruction when fighting for a city, we must make provisions to exploit

underground and basement spaces and have in readiness forces and means intended for eliminating the aftereffects of nuclear and chemical attacks and also for extinguishing fires. After capturing a city, it is necessary for the main grouping of troops to move out rapidly beyond the city limits.

CHAPTER 5

AIRBORNE LANDING OPERATIONS

260. Airborne landing operations usually are organized and conducted by order of the Supreme High Command for the purpose of immediately exploiting the results of nuclear strikes delivered by strategic means and of accomplishing operational-strategic tasks deep in the enemy rear.

In certain cases airborne landing operations can be carried out in support of a front offensive operation in order to accomplish operational tasks.

261. Airborne landing operations organized by the Supreme High Command are conducted primarily to accomplish the following main tasks:

-- to seize important administrative-political centers and economic areas and to disrupt governmental and military control;

-- to seize and destroy enemy missile, air, and naval bases;

-- to complete the final defeat of enemy groupings subjected to nuclear strikes; and

-- to capture straits zones and major islands in conjunction with naval forces.

Furthermore, airborne landing forces can accomplish the tasks of seizing or destroying major nuclear warhead depots and sources and reserves of strategic raw materials, of initiating combat actions on new axes, of establishing a front in the enemy's rear by supporting internal resistance forces, and also of carrying out occupation functions.

262. The composition of the forces and means allocated to conduct an airborne landing operation will depend on the goal of the operation, the nature of the tasks charged to the airborne landing force, and the conditions of the situation. Large units and units of airborne troops constitute the basis of the landing force. To reinforce them, we can land stripped-down motorized rifle (armored) units.

To conduct a landing operation we allocate large units of military transport aviation, air defense forces, long range aviation, and -- on coastal axes -- naval forces.

To support the landing and combat actions of an airborne landing force, we can allocate forces and means of the front whose zone the airborne landing force is employed in or whose zone the military transport aviation large units with the landing force fly through.

The depth at which an airborne landing force is dropped or landed is determined by its tasks and the capabilities of military transport aviation; it can range from 800 to 1,000 kilometers or more away from the line of contact of the sides.

263. The successful conduct of an airborne landing operation is achieved by comprehensive and careful preparation of it; by precise coordination of the actions of all forces and means participating in the operation; by destruction of the enemy's forces, his nuclear forces above all, in the areas of the landing and of the combat actions of the landing force, and also by reliable neutralization of his air defense means on the flight routes of the military transport aircraft carrying the landing force; by the surprise drop of the airborne landing force immediately following a massed nuclear strike when the enemy has not yet come to his senses and his air defense system is disorganized; by the resolute actions of the troops of the landing force after landing for the final defeat of the enemy and seizure of the assigned objectives; by comprehensive support of the airborne landing force and continuous control of the troops participating in the airborne landing operation.

264. Surprise in employing an airborne landing force is achieved by: covertly preparing and reliably securing the departure area for the landing against enemy reconnaissance, by covertly concentrating the airborne landing force and the military transport aviation in it; by having the airborne landing force and military transport aviation remain in the departure area for the landing for the minimum necessary length of time and by camouflaging them carefully; and by implementing measures to deceive the enemy.

265. So that an airborne landing force can carry out immediate preparations for the landing, we designate a departure area which includes airfields for the landing of military transport aviation units and areas for the accommodation of troops to be landed.

The distance separating the departure area from the landing area must ensure that military transport aircraft can fly non-stop to the landing area. In case this distance exceeds the flight radius of the aircraft, aircraft refueling areas with the necessary quantity of airfields and fuel reserves are designated on the flight routes of the military transport aviation large units and units carrying the landing force.

266. The landing area is selected in the vicinity of the objectives of the combat actions of the airborne landing force, taking into account the results of nuclear strikes and the radioactive contamination of the terrain. It must have an adequate number of drop sites and landing sites (airfields) permitting the airborne landing force to be dropped or landed in a short period of time.

The size of the landing area will depend on the strength of the airborne landing force, its task, the methods of landing, and the nature of the terrain.

267. Preparing an airborne landing operation, in addition to the usual measures for organizing, planning, and comprehensively supporting the operation, includes the preparation of the departure area and of the refueling areas for military transport aircraft, and the concentration and preparation of troops and military transport aviation for the landing.

268. The decision for the conduct of an airborne landing operation specifies:

-- the estimate of the situation and of the forces of the enemy in the landing area, on the flight routes, and in the area of the landing force's forthcoming actions;

-- the goal of the operation and the concept of its conduct;

-- the composition, tasks, and landing area of the airborne landing force;

-- the time to drop and land the airborne landing force;

-- the procedure for delivering nuclear strikes in the landing area and on the flight routes of the large units of military transport aviation carrying the landing force;

-- the tasks of large units of the branches of the Armed Forces and branch arms participating in the airborne landing operation, and the organization of cooperation among them and with the airborne landing force;

-- the departure area for the landing, the refueling areas for military transport aircraft, and the measures to prepare them;

-- the procedure and time periods for concentrating the troops to be landed and military transport aviation in the departure area for the landing;

-- the tasks for comprehensive support of the operation;

-- the time in which to become ready for landing;

-- the organization of control and communications; the landing force commander and his deputies.

On the basis of the decision adopted, the plan of the airborne landing operation and the directive (combat order) are drawn up and necessary instructions are issued to the troops on the preparation and support of the impending combat actions.

269. The plan of the airborne landing operation is worked out by the General Staff with involvement of the staffs of the airborne troops and military transport aviation, as well as representatives of the main staffs of the branches of the Armed Forces. The plan of the airborne landing operation defines the procedure for fulfilment of the tasks and for the cooperation of all the forces and means of the different branches of the Armed Forces participating in the operation.

When the plan is being developed, primary attention is devoted to exploiting to the maximum the results of nuclear strikes delivered by strategic means.

A landing plan and a rear services support plan are attached to the plan of the airborne landing operation.

270. The landing plan, as a rule, indicates:

-- the situation in the landing zone of the landing force and the presumed line our troops will have reached by the beginning of the landing;

-- the departure area for the landing, including main and alternate airfields and the distribution by airfields of aviation units and troops to be landed, the disposition areas of landing force units while they are preparing for the landing, and the waiting areas;

-- the landing area, including landing sites, main and alternate airfields in a touchdown landing, and the distribution by airfields of aviation units and troops to be landed;

-- the flight route and flight profile and the operational disposition of the aviation units while proceeding to the landing area and when returning to the recovery airfields, the flight routes of diversionary groups, and the operating areas of one's own fighters;

-- the targets to be neutralized by the means of the front (fronts) and according to the plan of the Supreme High Command;

-- the maneuvering of aviation units in the landing area, the order of their arrival at the landing sites (airfields for setting down the landing force);

-- the aircraft refueling areas, if these are designated;

-- the sites of the location of aircraft guidance radiotechnical means;

-- the estimate of the flight time of aviation units to the landing;

-- the order of departure of aviation units from the landing area after the drop (setting down) of the landing force;

-- schedules of natural light in the departure area, refueling areas, and landing area.

In the landing plan we set forth in writing the procedure for accomplishing the landing; the tasks of the aviation large units, the assessment of the situation, the composition of the aviation large units, the order of flight to the landing; the readiness for takeoff for the landing, the tasks of aviation units, the order of arrival in the landing area and at the landing sites of each aviation unit, the combat support, the rear services support, the aerial weather reconnaissance, the organization of control, and the alternate airfields on the flight routes.

The planning table for the landing, which is an integral part of the plan, indicates: the aviation units, the number and type of aircraft, the takeoff airfields, the composition of the landing force, the landing sites, and the time and altitude for the drop of the landing force.

271. The rear services support plan provides for: the procedure to provide troops to be landed with ammunition, fuel, and other materiel-technical means; the organization of materiel-technical support for military transport aviation; the materiel support airfields and the procedure for concentrating materiel reserves on them and preparing cargoes for the landing; the procedure for the air delivery of materiel to the landing force and the military transport aircraft to be allocated for this; the medical support for the operation; and the organization of support for the airborne landing force after it has linked up with our troops.

The main supply area of the airborne landing force, with materiel support airfields and necessary reserves, usually is established in the depth of the territory of the country and the alternate area is established in the refueling area for the military transport aviation large units or in the rear area of a front. We organize the evacuation of sick and wounded from the combat actions areas of the airborne landing force to hospitals set up in supply areas. On coastal axes, naval forces can be

allocated for the delivery of materiel to the landing force and for evacuation.

272. The cooperation of the airborne landing force with the other troops (forces) participating in the operation is organized by the General Staff for the entire period of the operation. It consists in coordinating the actions of the landing force with the actions of aviation, front troops, naval forces (on a coastal axis), and Air Defense Forces of the Country, taking into account nuclear strikes by strategic means in order to exploit their results in good time and fully.

As part of the landing force we can land representatives of aviation so as to call for and guide aviation units to target, representatives of military transport aviation to organize the preparation of airfields and the reception of the landing force's touchdown landing group, and representatives of the Navy to coordinate the actions of naval forces with the landing force.

Cooperation among large units and units of the landing force while they are accomplishing their tasks in the enemy rear is organized by the landing force commander.

273. The air defense of the departure area for the landing is effected within the overall system of the air defense of the country. To cover the combat formations of military transport aviation during the landing we allocate fighter aviation of the Air Defense Forces of the Country and of the air army of the front within whose zone military tranport aviation is making the flight with the landing force. The air defense of the airborne landing force operating in the enemy rear is accomplished by landing force means and by fighter aviation within the limits of its range.

274. In the course of preparing an airborne landing operation, reconnaissance is organized for the purpose of determining: the forces, composition, grouping, and nature of the actions of the enemy in the landing area and the nature of the forthcoming combat actions of the airborne landing force; the enemy's air defense system and radiotechnical means as well as the radiation situation and meteorological conditions on the flight routes of the military transport aviation carrying the landing force and in the landing area; the nature of the terrain,

the road conditions, and the availability of drop sites and landing sites (airfields) in the landing area; the political situation and the possibilities of utilizing local means in the area of the forthcoming actions of the airborne landing force.

When possible, the areas of the landing and of the combat actions of the airborne landing force are photographed and photo plotting boards of them are prepared.

275. Measures for operational camouflage and combat against enemy radioelectronic means while conducting an airborne landing operation are organized by the General Staff in accordance with the decision of the Supreme High Command.

276. Preparation of the departure area for the landing and the refueling areas for military transport aviation is done ahead of time. It consists in preparing airfields to receive military transport aviation, in concentrating on them the required materiel and technical means, in constructing roads, and in organizing communications. While preparing the departure area for the landing, we conduct radiation, bacteriological, and chemical reconnaissance of the troop movement routes and concentration areas.

Concentration of landing troops in the waiting areas (to go to the airfields) is carried out with camouflage measures and taking into account the time needed to complete preparations for the landing and for loading and boarding the aircraft. The time military transport aviation remains at the airfields in the departure area for the landing must be minimal, yet permit aircraft to be refueled and loaded with the airborne landing force.

277. The General Staff organizes the control of the forces participating in the airborne landing operation. Direct control over the combat actions of the airborne landing force is exercised by the commander of the airborne division (regiment) to be landed, who is the commander of the airborne landing force.

In the departure area for the landing, the command post of the commander of the airborne landing force is located together with or near the command post of the military transport aviation commander.

When flying to the landing area, the commander and chief of staff of the airborne landing force with their personal radio sets proceed on different aircraft together with the commanders of the large units of military transport aviation.

During combat actions, the commander of the airborne landing force controls troops from the command post located in a site determined according to the situation.

The commanders of the fronts in whose zones the airborne landing force is dropped, and -- on a coastal axis -- also the fleet commander, establish direct communications with the landing force commander and must be ready, at the order of the Supreme High Command, to themselves assume control of the landing force.

The staffs of an airborne landing force are forbidden to employ the common secure troop control documents. For them, and for the staffs and forces cooperating with them, special secure troop control documents are drawn up.

278. Communications, when preparing and conducting an airborne landing operation, must ensure control of the forces and means in the departure area for the landing, during the flight of the landing force, and during its combat actions.

In the departure area for the landing, the communications of the airborne landing force commander with the units comprising the landing force are organized on radio nets and wire lines using the communications means of the airfields and aviation technical units servicing these airfields and also using communications lines of the airfield network. Specially designated communications units (subunits) may be used for this purpose when required.

During the flight, communications for the landing force are provided on military transport aviation radio nets.

After the landing, communications with the landing force commander are handled on radio links through radio-relay stations and through the command posts of fronts operating on the given axis, and -- on coastal axes -- through command posts of the fleet.

Airborne landing force radio communications with the commander of the front in whose zone the landing force has been set down, as well as with the staffs of the troops moving into the area of actions of the landing force, are effected on separate radio links and on the cooperation radio nets.

In the combat actions area, the radio communications of the airborne landing force and staff with the commanders and staffs of subordinate units are organized on separate radio links and radio nets. When organizing radio communications, special attention is devoted to measures ensuring radio communications under conditions of radio-frequency jamming by the enemy.

279. The instruction on the beginning of the drop and landing of the airborne landing force is issued taking into account the time needed for loading and boarding of landing troops onto the aircraft and for flight of the military transport aviation to the landing area.

280. Before the beginning and during the course of the landing, additional reconnaissance is carried out and it defines more precisely: the changes in the enemy's grouping; the areas subjected to nuclear strikes and the degree of damage these have inflicted on the enemy; the radiation situation and the condition of the enemy air defense on the flight routes of military transport aviation and in the landing and combat actions area of the airborne landing force; and weather conditions.

As reconnaissance data are received, they are given to the landing force commander and the commander of military transport aviation while landing preparations are being completed, before the landing force boards the aircraft, and while flying to the landing area.

281. The flight of military transport aviation large units to the landing of the airborne landing force is effected on one or several routes in different combat formations, echeloned in altitude, and taking into account the meteorological and radiation situation and the opposition of enemy air defense means.

282. An airborne landing force is landed by parachute or by a parachute and touchdown method. An airborne division is landed

by the parachute method and, as a rule, in a single flight. The drop of a parachute group of an airborne landing force is carried out at several drop sites. The landing of a touchdown landing group is carried out after seizing airfields (landing sites) in advance and preparing them to receive the aircraft. To prepare the airfields (landing sites), the required personnel and engineer equipment are airlifted on military transport aircraft. The receiving of the aircraft is carried out by a director of flight activity, who is allocated from the military transport aviation large unit and dropped with communications means together with the landing force's parachute group.

283. The combat actions of an airborne force develop over a considerable area and are conducted by units and individual subunits on disconnected axes for the purpose of exploiting to the maximum the results of nuclear strikes. The actions are characterized by vigorous aggressiveness and resoluteness as well as by the extensive use of maneuvering. To do this, landing force units and subunits must be capable of fulfilling their assigned tasks independently.

284. A landing force engages primarily in offensive battles, delivering surprise and brief attacks from the march against the enemy, as well as carrying out bold raids against the enemy rear.

The aggressive offensive actions of an airborne landing force may also be combined with elements of a defense by a portion of the forces on separate axes.

The airborne landing force contains and stops enemy reserves being transferred from the depth of the theater on their movement routes and, after the delivery of nuclear strikes against them, without delay attacks and destroys the surviving units.

The airborne force disorganizes administrative andd military control by capturing important political and administrative centers, major staffs, communications centers, radio stations, and other enemy rear area installations. As a rule, political centers and major cities subjected to nuclear strikes are sealed off by the landing force. To do this, the closest airfields are seized and the main roads are cut.

As a rule, enemy missile, air, and naval bases are destroyed or captured by the airborne landing force after they have been struck with nuclear weapons.

The capture of straits zones and major islands by an airborne landing force usually is accomplished in cooperation with naval forces. First of all, shore installations controlling the straits by fire as well as administrative centers, airfields, and communications centers are seized, and the most important roads in the areas adjoining the straits are cut.

285. During combat actions, and upon request of the airborne landing force commander, nuclear strikes may be delivered by Supreme High Command and front means against enemy reserves and other enemy installations.

As troops on the offensive approach the combat actions area of the airborne landing force, the landing force may be resubordinated to the front commander.

286. On fulfilling the assigned task, the airborne landing force, as a rule, is withdrawn to the reserve of the General Headquarters for subsequent employment in accordance with the decision of the Supreme High Command.

CHAPTER 6

DEFENSIVE OPERATIONS

287. Defense is a forced type of troop combat action. It may be employed primarily on secondary axes and in secondary theaters of military operations where an offensive proves inadvisable. In various instances, especially in the initial period of a war, an unfavorable situation may compel individual large units or formations to temporarily go over to the defense also on some axes of the main theaters of military operations.

288. A defense is used to weaken and bleed the superior forces of an enemy on the offensive, to inflict great losses on him, to disrupt his offensive, and to gain time so as to concentrate additional forces and means, go over to a decisive offensive, and achieve victory.

The best method of defense is to attack the enemy.

Defense is the lot of the weak side. But defense also has strong points: a single soldier in a sheltered position in a defense can destroy ten to twenty enemy soldiers on the offensive. A defense has no front, flanks, or rear: wherever the enemy shows up, that is the front of the defense.

In a defense tenacity wins. Even in a hopeless situation, tenacity will lead to victory. Only the courageous, boundlessly selfless, and tenacious are crowned by victory with the laurel wreath. In a defense a retreat is unthinkable -- he who flees is always overtaken by death. In a defense it is necessary to stand to the death.

Defense can also be employed for the purposes of economizing forces and means, holding captured areas, safeguarding the flanks of offensive groupings, and repelling the landing of enemy amphibious landing forces.

289. Troops will most often go over to a defense under present-day conditions in the course of offensive operations as a result of the unsuccessful outcome of a meeting engagement or

when they have not succeeded in disrupting a powerful enemy counterattack or counteroffensive, as well as when our troops break out to a seacoast and it is necessary to organize an antilanding defense. Furthermore, troops may go over to a defense ahead of time when an unfavorable situation for going over to the offensive has developed on one axis or another.

Going over to the defense during an offensive operation will in most cases be done under enemy strikes, with nuclear weapons being used by him under conditions of aggressive actions by his aviation and ground forces, and by his naval forces on coastal axes. This being the case, our troops may go over to the defense in various sectors at different times.

290. To conduct a defense, troops will have available a limited number of nuclear warheads or else they will repel the enemy with conventional types of weapons alone.

Nuclear and chemical weapons are used in a defense to disrupt a prepared offensive of the enemy, to destroy groupings that have penetrated or broken through, to hit his forces during the conduct of counterattacks, and mainly to safeguard the going over of our troops to the offensive.

291. A defense must be aggressive and stable. This is achieved by:

-- timely detection of the enemy's grouping of forces and means and by preempting him in the delivery of nuclear strikes;

-- destruction of the detected nuclear attack means and attack groupings of the enemy;

-- a diversified disposition of the defense and a deep operational and battle disposition of the troops;

-- skilful exploitation of the terrain and engineer preparation of it;

-- great aggressiveness of defending troops combined with their tenacious holding of important areas and key positions;

-- skilful organization of a system of all types of fire combined with engineer obstacles and rapid concentration of fire against enemy groupings on any axis;

-- efficient organization of cooperation and continuous maintenance of it during the defensive battle and by rapid restoration of a disrupted disposition of troops or system of fire in the defense;

-- reliable air defense;

-- timely maneuvering of troops and obstacles on the decisive axes by conduct of decisive counterattacks and counterthrusts against enemy groupings that have penetrated or broken through into the depth;

-- conduct of continuous and deep reconnaissance of the enemy with all available means and by the organization of surveillance and security of the flanks of the troops and of the gaps between defensive areas;

-- skilful organization of protection for the troops against weapons of mass destruction, by timely elimination of the aftereffects of an enemy nuclear attack, by expert use of camouflage, and by the organization of warfare against enemy radioelectronic means;

-- firm and continuous control of troops and by their provision with all necessary materiel and technical means.

292. Disrupting an offensive and routing the enemy is achieved by delivering surprise nuclear strikes and also strikes of aircraft and artillery, beginning at their maximum ranges. These strikes are delivered against the detected enemy means of mass destruction, troop groupings, control posts, aviation on airfields, radiotechnical means, and also against railroad junctions, ports, crossings, and other important installations.

For success in these strikes, rocket troops, aviation, and artillery must be kept in constant combat readiness.

293. A very important measure for disrupting and repelling an enemy offensive is the counterpreparation. It includes

nuclear strikes and fire strikes with conventional means delivered against the enemy main groupings which have been readied for an offensive. To carry out a counterpreparation we allocate rocket troops, artillery, aviation, and the tanks of first-echelon divisions.

For the purposes of the final defeat of the enemy's attack groupings readied for an offensive and of seizing advantageous areas and lines which ensure favorable conditions for subsequently going over to the offensive (counteroffensive), in a number of cases it will be expedient, following the nuclear strikes, to deliver an attack against these groupings with combined-arms large units. To carry out such an attack, we allocate divisions of the first echelon, and in certain cases, a portion of the forces and means of the army's reserve.

294. In case the enemy penetrates or breaks through the defense, defending troops will deliver decisive counterattacks and counterthrusts against his grouping which has broken through.

Counterattacks are delivered for the purpose of restoring a disrupted defense. The aims of counterthrusts are to decisively rout the enemy groupings that have penetrated or broken through into the depth of the defense and to create conditions for the front or army troops to subsequently go over to the offensive.

Counterthrusts must be initiated by strikes with nuclear and chemical weapons as well as with conventional means of destruction against the enemy's main forces on the offensive, and first and foremost, against newly detected missile sites and airfields.

Following this, second-echelon large units and the reserves will deliver counterthrusts from various axes for the purpose of decisively routing the enemy grouping that has penetrated and of ensuring the subsequent going over to the offensive. As a rule, troop deployment for the counterthrust is carried out from the march.

295. An army or army corps is assigned a zone for the defense.

Depending on the situation and the combat strength of the formation (large unit), the width of the defense zone may amount to the following: up to 150 kilometers or more for an army and up to 70 kilometers or more for an army corps. Should a front go over to a defense, the width of its defense zone may amount to 500 kilometers or more.

296. The disposition of the defense of a front or army (corps) includes the grouping of forces and means, the system of fire, and the engineer preparation of the terrain. The disposition of the defense must ensure: the efficient and full exploitation of the combat capabilities of rocket troops, artillery, and aviation; the protection of the troops against the enemy's means of mass destruction; the fullest exploitation of the maneuver capabilities of tank and motorized rifle (armored) troops for the purposes of rapidly building up the forces and means in order to counter an enemy on the offensive and to inflict a decisive defeat on him; and also continuous control of the forces and means of the defending troops.

297. A front or army (corps) defense zone includes: the defense zone of the first-echelon formations (large units), the disposition (defense) areas and deployment lines of the second echelon and the reserves, the positions of missile and artillery units (large units) and of air defense units, the control posts, and the system of engineer obstacles.

The defense zones of first-echelon formations (large units) are intended for the positioning of the troops for the purpose of delaying the enemy's offensive, inflicting maximum damage on him, and bringing about conditions favoring the maneuvering of the second echelons and reserves.

For the second echelon and reserves we prepare disposition areas and deployment lines for the delivery of counterattacks and counterthrusts. When time is available, defense zones are prepared for second echelons, especially on the most likely axes of an enemy offensive. These areas are exploited to repel the attacks of major enemy groupings, especially tank groupings, that have broken through to the depth of the defense.

298. Groupings of forces and means in a defense are established by axes. In doing so, the main forces should be

situated in the depth of the defense so as to ensure their rapid maneuver to decisive axes.

The movement of the troops forward to the defense areas and the occupation of these areas must be carried out covertly, on a broad front, in the shortest time possible, and under the cover of air defense large units and units allocated for this purpose.

When going over to the defense in the course of an offensive, the grouping of forces and means usually will be established while repelling enemy attacks.

All measures to establish a defensive grouping, particularly the regrouping of the rocket troops and artillery, are carried out so as to ensure constant readiness to deliver immediate strikes against the enemy and reliable protection against weapons of mass destruction.

299. The operational disposition (battle formation) of the troops in a defense will depend on the goal of the defensive operation (battle), the conditions of going over to the defense, and the strength of one's own and the enemy's forces and means.

The operational disposition of a front or a combined-arms army in the defense usually includes: first-echelon formations or large units, a second echelon or a combined-arms reserve, rocket troops and artillery, an air army (supporting aviation), air defense troops, and various-purpose reserves.

The battle formation of an army corps, when it has missile units, may include the very same elements of disposition as in an army.

300. The first echelon of a front or army (corps) is intended to repel the enemy's offensive, to inflict maximum losses on his offensive grouping, and to create conditions favoring his final defeat by a counterattack (counterthrust) of the second echelon (combined-arms reserve).

The second echelon of an army (corps) is intended, as a rule, to deliver counterthrusts (counterattacks) during a defensive engagement (battle). A portion of the second-echelon forces of an army (corps) can be used to firmly retain defensive

areas or to destroy airborne landing forces and enemy groupings penetrating into the depth of the defense.

As a rule, a front's second echelon is used for going over to an offensive. In certain cases it can be used to deliver a frontal counterthrust.

301. Reserves are formed from large units of the various branch arms and special troops and are intended to participate in counterthrusts, to reinforce troops operating on the decisive axes, or to replace large units (units) which have lost their combat effectiveness, to destroy tank groupings and airborne landing forces, and also to accomplish other tasks arising suddenly during the operation.

Reserves that are used up during an operation must be restored immediately by regrouping forces and means from secondary axes and drawing from forces approaching from the depth.

The disposition areas of second-echelon large units and of reserves and their distance from the forward edge of the defense must ensure conditions favoring the organization of reliable protection for the troops against weapons of mass destruction and the dispersed and concealed positioning of the troops, and it must permit them to carry out a rapid maneuver and deploy on any axis in order to deliver counterthrusts or to accomplish other combat tasks. In addition to the main disposition areas of second echelons and reserves, we must also designate and prepare alternate areas.

302. The grouping of rocket troops must ensure fullest exploitation of their combat capabilities in the front (army) defense zone and shifting of their fire toward the flanks.

The main tasks of rocket troops in an offensive operation are: to destroy the enemy's nuclear attack means; to disrupt his offensive by delivering strikes with nuclear and chemical warheads; to conduct a counterpreparation against an enemy grouping readied for an offensive; to rout enemy reserves which are approaching and concentrating; to deliver attacks against enemy forces that have gone over to the offensive and hit them when one's own forces are carrying out counterthrusts, and also

to disorganize the enemy's troop control and disrupt the work of his rear services.

303. Artillery fulfils the following tasks in a defensive operation: destroys nuclear means; prevents, together with rocket troops and aviation, the approach and deployment of enemy troops for an offensive; combats enemy artillery and tanks; participates in counterpreparation; conducts preparatory fire and fire support of troops during counterattacks and counterthrusts; destroys control posts and rear services installations; and participates in the destruction of enemy airborne forces that have been landed. To fulfil these tasks, tanks may also be allocated.

304. The grouping of air defense troops is composed of: surface-to-air missile large units and units and radiotechnical units (subunits).

The most important tasks of air defense troops are: to cover from the air the main troop groupings, airfields, and major rear services installations; to destroy enemy airborne landing forces in the air, and also to prevent the overflight of enemy aircraft and unmanned means into the interior of the country.

These tasks are accomplished by: continuous reconnaissance of the air enemy and timely warning of air defense forces and means, troops, and rear services installations; destruction of aircraft and cruise missiles in the air; organizing of the cooperation and maneuvering of air defense forces and means; and implementing of camouflage measures.

Air defense is organized to the entire depth of the troop disposition and it is implemented continuously. It must ensure that enemy air strikes are repelled from any direction with timeliness.

305. A front air army (supporting aviation) in a defensive operation fulfils the following tasks: destroys the enemy's nuclear attack means and his artillery and aircraft; hinders the regrouping, concentration, and deployment of enemy troops; participates in the conduct of a counterpreparation; provides air support for troop combat actions to repel enemy attacks and when our troops are delivering counterthrusts; provides cover, in cooperation with surface-to-air missile troops, to troops,

airfields, and rear services installations; destroys enemy airborne landing forces, and -- on coastal axes -- amphibious landing forces; and conducts aerial reconnaissance.

306. Engineer preparation of the terrain is carried out in conformity with the concept of the operation, the operational disposition of the troops, and their tasks. It must hamper to the utmost the enemy's conduct of an offensive; it must ensure stability of the defense and provide the best conditions for the conduct of aggressive defensive actions as well as protection for the troops against nuclear weapons and other means of destruction.

When preparing the terrain from the engineer standpoint we prepare: rocket troop siting areas, firing positions for artillery and air defense means, a system of defensive positions and areas for first-echelon formations (large units), and -- when time is available -- for the second echelon and the combined-arms reserves; disposition areas for large units of the second echelon (reserves) as well as deployment lines for them; control posts; and roads for troop maneuvering, materiel delivery, and evacuation. Furthermore, engineer obstacles and demolitions, in conjunction with the system of fire, are prepared forward of the front of the defense and in the intervals not occupied by troops as well as in the depth of the defense, especially on the likely axes of an enemy offensive.

When preparing the terrain from the engineer standpoint in the defense we must exploit the terrain's protective characteristics and extensively use means of mechanization and prefabricated and demountable structures.

Preparing a defensive operation

307. Preparing a defensive operation consists in having the command, staffs, party political organs, and troops carry out measures directed toward the establishment of an aggressive and stable defense within a limited period of time.

The principal measures for preparing a defensive operation (battle) are: to make the decision, assign tasks to the troops, and plan the operation; to establish groupings of forces and means; to prepare nuclear strikes and strikes by conventional

means of fire against the enemy on the distant approaches and during the conduct of a counterpreparation; to organize cooperation, air defense, and reliable protection against weapons of mass destruction; to prepare the terrain from the engineer standpoint; and to organize comprehensive troop support and troop control.

The nature and duration of the preparation for a defensive operation will depend on the conditions of the situation in which the troops go over to the defense. However, under any conditions the preparation of the operation is carried out so that the troops are maintained in constant readiness to disrupt and repel an enemy offensive.

When troops go over to the defense, it is necessary, first of all, to organize the system of fire, to ensure that troops go over to the defense in an organized way, and to establish the defensive troop grouping and a system of engineer obstacles and demolitions.

308. The front or army commander (corps commander), having ascertained the task and assessed the situation, outlines the concept of the operation (battle) in which he defines where, when and with what forces, means and methods to hit the enemy and disrupt his offensive, where to concentrate the main efforts, and the operational disposition (battle formations) of the troops.

In conformity with the concept, the formation commander (commander) defines:

-- the tasks, targets, and method of employing nuclear weapons and other means of mass destruction;

-- the tasks of the rocket troops, first- and second-echelon large units, combined-arms reserve, artillery and aviation, air defense troops, and engineer and chemical troops, and the cooperation procedure;

-- the time in which the system of fire is to be made ready; the nature, times, and sequence for the engineer preparation of the rocket troop and artillery siting areas, of the defense zones of first-echelon formations (large units), of the main and alternate disposition areas and defense areas of second-echelon

large units and the reserves, their deployment lines, as well as the system and readiness times for engineer obstacles and objects of demolitions;

-- the tasks of the troops in carrying out a counterpreparation and delivering an attack in front of the forward edge of defense, if such actions are contemplated;

-- the organization of control and the deputies.

Based on the decision of the front or army commander (corps commander), the staff draws up the operational directive (combat order).

309. When assigning tasks to the first-echelon formations (large units), we specify: the combat strength and reinforcement means; the defense zones, axes of concentration of the main efforts; the number, type, and yield of the nuclear and chemical warheads allocated to the large units and of those used by the front (army) in support of them; the nature of the engineer preparation of the defense; the areas of counterpreparation and the forces and means allocated for this; the counterthrust (counterattack) axes; the tasks to combat enemy airborne landing forces; the tasks of adjacent forces and procedure for cooperation with them and with supporting aviation; the tasks of organizing protection against weapons of mass destruction, responsibility for safeguarding gaps, boundaries between adjacent forces, and flanks; the location of the command post; the materiel allocated for the operation; and the time in which the defense is to be made ready.

We also specify, for the first-echelon formations (large units) in whose defense zone counterthrusts are planned, the deployment lines of troops intended for the counterthrust and the routes of movement to them.

For the second-echelon formations (large units, combined-arms reserve) we specify: the disposition (defense) areas which should be prepared or occupied; the tasks and axes of the counterthrust (counterattacks) and lines of deployment; the procedure for supporting the actions of the second echelon (combined-arms reserve); the number of nuclear and chemical warheads allocated to carry out the counterthrust; the procedure

for the cooperation of reserves with first-echelon large units when going over to a defense and when delivering counterthrusts.

310. For front (army) rocket troops we specify: the siting areas of missile large units and units, the procedure and times for occupying them; the number of missiles and of nuclear and other warheads allocated and the procedure for preparing and delivering them to sites; the targets to be hit and the procedure for delivering nuclear strikes against them; the areas of counterpreparation and the rocket troop forces and means allocated to conduct it; the tasks to destroy enemy groupings that have penetrated; the procedure for maneuvering; the measures to ensure the safety of one's own troops and also to observe and monitor the results of nuclear strikes.

In case chemical weapons are used, we specify: the targets to be hit, the formula of the toxic agents, the chemical warheads to be expended against each target and according to the troop tasks, the means for the employment of the toxic agents, and the safety measures for one's own troops.

311. For the air army (supporting aviation) we specify: the tasks on whose accomplishment it is to concentrate its main efforts; the tasks to combat enemy nuclear means; the tasks to destroy enemy groupings on distant approaches, when counterpreparation is being conducted, when repelling enemy attacks, and when counterthrusts (counterattacks) are being delivered; and the targets and procedure for the employment of nuclear and chemical warheads.

312. Planning for a defensive operation is carried out by the front (army) staff together with the chiefs of branch arms, special troops, and services. The decision of the front (army) commander for the operation constitutes the basis of the planning. A defensive operation is planned by troop tasks and axes of likely enemy actions. The operation plan is drawn up on the map, and matters which cannot be depicted graphically are set forth in a legend.

The chiefs of branch arms, special troops, and services develop plans for the combat employment of the branch arms, special troops, and the comprehensive support of the operation.

313. When a counterpreparation is being planned, we specify the tasks of rocket troops, artillery, aviation, and also of first-echelon large units. For each missile large unit (unit) and aviation large unit we indicate the strike targets or areas, the expenditure of conventional, nuclear, and chemical warheads, the time to be ready, and the order of actions after the strike.

The duration of a counterpreparation will depend on its purpose, the number and yield of the nuclear warheads allocated, the composition of the forces and means brought in, as well as on the possible number and characteristics of the enemy targets to be hit.

314. Counterthrusts and counterattacks are planned in several variants; and these specify: the tasks of rocket troops, aviation, artillery, and air defense troops; the second-echelon (reserve) deployment lines; the procedure for the forward movement and deployment of the troops for the counterthrust; the tasks of first-echelon troops defending on the axis of the enemy offensive; the measures to support the counterthrusts, and the troop control procedure.

It is necessary to take into account that, in the initial period of a war, troop groupings for a counterthrust will sometimes be formed during the defensive engagement by using reserves approaching from the depth and by maneuvering forces and means from secondary axes.

315. When organizing troop combat actions to destroy enemy airborne landing forces, we specify: the likely landing areas of the airborne landing forces and the possible composition of these forces; the tasks of rocket troops and aviation to destroy the landing forces in their concentration areas and on the airfields at the time they are boarding the aircraft (helicopters); the tasks of air defense forces and means to destroy landing forces in the air; the forces and means allocated to destroy the landing force after it lands and their tasks; and the procedure and signals to warn one's own forces of the landing of an enemy airborne force.

316. When organizing the air defense, the front or army commander (corps commander) specifies: the tasks of air defense troops, their grouping, and their maneuver procedure when

preparing for the operation and during its conduct; what troop groupings and rear services facilities to concentrate the main efforts on covering; the procedures for the cooperation of forces and means with adjacent forces and the Air Defense Forces of the Country; the organization of jamming and measures to protect their own radiotechnical means against enemy jamming; the control procedure; and the times in which to achieve readiness of the air defense forces and means.

317. Cooperation in a defensive operation is organized by troop tasks and the probable axes of the enemy offensive.

For the purposes of disrupting the enemy's offensive or weakening his groupings, we coordinate the actions of rocket troops, artillery, tanks, and aircraft to destroy the enemy's nuclear attack means and his main troop groupings, and we also coordinate the actions of combined-arms large units with strikes by the rocket troops and aviation when the decision provides for the delivery of a strike in front of the forward edge of defense.

The cooperation of troops to accomplish the task of repelling an enemy offensive is organized by coordinating the combat action methods of first-echelon armies (corps, divisions) with strikes by nuclear and chemical weapons and artillery fire, and with the use of aviation and engineer obstacles so as to hit the enemy while he is still on the approaches to the defense areas and in intervals not occupied by troops, and to slow down his rate of advance as much as possible.

For the purposes of accomplishing the task of routing enemy groupings that have broken through into the depth of the defense, main attention is devoted to coordinating the strikes of rocket troops, artillery, and aviation with the actions of the formations (large units) allocated to deliver the counterthrust.

The signals for cooperation, target designation, and recognition are worked out in advance and are conveyed to the troops when combat tasks are assigned to them.

318. To ensure the conduct of a defense at night, all fire means located at firing sites are prepared to conduct fire using night vision equipment and illumination means as well as without them. The commanders of first-echelon large units organize the

use of illumination means to light up the terrain. As darkness approaches, provisions are made to increase reconnaissance and observation, and measures are taken to ensure the combat readiness of troops to repel an enemy night offensive. Second echelons and reserves are prepared for maneuver to the threatened axes, for the conduct of counterattacks, and for delivery of counterthrusts under conditions of darkness.

319. The engineer preparation of the terrain upon going over to the defense is carried out by the forces of units and large units of all branch arms and special troops.

Emplacements are dug and personnel shelters are constructed in the defense zones occupied by first-echelon troops, in the disposition areas and on lines of deployment of second echelons and reserves, in the main siting areas of rocket troops, and at artillery and air defense troop positions. At the same time, engineer troop forces set up antitank obstacles in front of the forward edge, in gaps, and on the flanks, and preparations are made to set these up on the main axes in the depth of the defense; routes are established for the maneuver of troops, and structures are erected for control posts.

Later on, the engineer preparation of the defense areas, siting areas of rocket troops, and firing positions of artillery and air defense troops are improved and developed; the network of roads is expanded, and alternate and decoy areas and positions are prepared.

The sequence of engineer preparation of the terrain in the defense must be based on the requirements that the defense be constantly ready to fulfil its assigned tasks of disrupting the enemy's offensive and routing him and to protect troops against weapons of mass destruction.

320. In a defensive operation, reconnaissance must discover with timeliness the enemy's preparation and possible times for going over to the offensive. For these purposes, the main efforts of reconnaissance are concentrated on detecting the enemy's nuclear attack means, his main troop and aviation groupings, the probable axes of his attacks, and also the scale of his movements.

When organizing reconnaissance it is necessary to define: what tasks reconnaissance must concentrate its main efforts on accomplishing during the preparation and course of a defensive operation, what data reconnaissance must submit and by what time, and how to distribute tasks among the individual types of reconnaissance, taking their capabilities into account.

During the preparation and course of a defensive operation, the army commander and his staff exploit reconnaissance data which are received by way of information from the staffs of the front and of adjacent forces.

321. When preparing a defensive operation, protection against weapons of mass destruction must ensure maintaining the constant readiness of troops to repel an enemy offensive under conditions of massed strikes by nuclear, chemical, and bacteriological weapons and of the prolonged effect of radioactive and toxic substances and bacterial agents. To achieve this aim, the main protective efforts must be focused on supporting the troop groupings defending the key axes.

While preparing the operation, the main efforts of engineer, radiation, chemical, and bacteriological reconnaissance are focused on reconnaissance of routes when troops are regrouping, of main and alternate rocket troop siting areas, of defense areas to be occupied, and of forward movement routes and deployment lines for the troops intended to deliver counterthrusts.

Protecting troops against weapons of mass destruction is ensured by reliably sheltering them in engineer works, by periodically removing the troops from contaminated defensive areas to rest and receive food as decided by the senior commanders; by establishing increased reserves of protective means and by decontaminating personnel of the units and large units in the defense areas; and by rapidly eliminating the aftereffects of enemy use of nuclear and chemical weapons.

Large units which have been subjected to nuclear and chemical weapons strikes but have not lost their combat effectiveness eliminate the aftereffects of the use of these weapons by their own forces and means directly in the occupied defense areas; large units which have lost their combat effectiveness are replaced and removed from the defense areas for

the restoration of their combat effectiveness by the authorization of senior commanders.

322. Operational camouflage in a defensive operation is organized and implemented in accordance with the plan developed by the front (army) staff with the participation of the staffs and chiefs of the branch arms, special troops, and services.

The operational camouflage plan must provide for the execution of measures to conceal the main grouping of missile, tank, and motorized rifle (armored) units and large units and to simulate the concentration of our main efforts on secondary axes.

Combined-arms large units (units), reinforced with engineer units (subunits), can be designated to carry out the operational camouflage measures.

323. When organizing warfare against enemy radioelectronic means in a defensive operation, our main efforts are concentrated on neutralizing the most important radiotechnical systems of the main grouping of enemy troops on the offensive. Provisions are made for measures to provide antiradar camouflage of one's own troops and rear services installations and for countermeasures against enemy radio reconnaissance.

324. To safeguard the flanks of large units and the gaps not occupied by troops, responsibility for the flanks is established, continuous reconnaissance is organized, strikes by missiles, aviation, and artillery are prepared, engineer obstacles are set up, counterattacks and counterthrusts are also prepared, camouflage measures are carried out, and coooperation with adjacent forces is organized.

325. To control troops in a defensive operation, we set up: a command post, an alternate command post, and a rear control post. The organization and positioning of control posts must ensure the capability of maintaining reliable communications with subordinate troops, higher staffs, and adjacent forces.

The command post is positioned in the depth of the defense, usually away from the axes of expected enemy attacks. The alternate command post is positioned to the side of or behind the command post. The rear control post is positioned in an area

ensuring control over rear services units and facilities. It must be in constant readiness to assume control of the troops.

Control posts must periodically relocate during both the preparation and the course of the operation. For these purposes, alternate areas to position them in must be designated and prepared beforehand. No command post relocation can be carried out without the superior commander's authorization.

326. To provide continuous troop control in the defense, we establish an extensively developed and unified system of communications which ensures control over the formations (large units) of all branches of the armed forces and branch arms taking part in the operation.

Forming the basis of the communications system are the communications centers of the control posts and the auxiliary communications centers, which are connected to each other by radio, radio-relay, and wire lines.

Radio communications are organized by radio nets and radio links and are commonly used during a defensive engagement.

Radio-relay communications are organized by links and are used primarily to control rocket troops, first-echelon formations (large units), and also the second echelon and the reserves when conducting counterthrusts.

Wire communications are organized by links through alternate command posts and auxiliary communications centers. In doing so, the communications to each first-echelon formation (large unit) are organized over no less than two different links.

Stability of the communications system in the defense is achieved by developing it extensively along the front and in depth, by the integrated use of the various means of communications, by establishing a communications reserve, and by carrying out measures to protect radio and radio-relay communications against enemy jamming.

To support control in the defense, extensive use is made of messenger means of communications, primarily aircraft, helicopters, and armored vehicles.

For the purposes of concealing the location sites of control posts and communications centers, the transmitting radio stations are removed beyond the boundaries of the sites and controlled remotely. Furthermore, a specific operating routine which makes it hard for the enemy to conduct radio reconnaissance is established.

Conducting a defensive operation

327. All troop actions in a defensive operation must aim first of all to disrupt the enemy offensive.

When the enemy goes over to the offensive, it is necessary to inflict as many losses as possible on his nuclear attack means and main troop groupings and use subsequent nuclear strikes, fire of conventional means, and counterthrusts (counterattacks) of the second echelons and reserves to complete the final defeat of the enemy's main forces or halt his offensive and thereby create conditions for our troops to subsequently go over to a decisive offensive or to continue the offensive.

328. Under conditions of a defense established beforehand, the operation will be initiated by rocket troop, aviation, and artillery strikes employing conventional, nuclear, and chemical warheads. It is especially advantageous to deliver strikes by fire the moment the enemy is completing the concentration of his forces and means for going over to the offensive and to simultaneously take action against his approaching reserves.

To deliver these strikes, we allocate the maximum possible number of fire means and aircraft. The principal targets of these strikes are: missile sites, aircraft on airfields, missile assembly bases, depots of mass destruction weapons, main troop groupings in concentration areas, key control posts, railroad junctions, ports, and rear services installations. Subsequent strikes are delivered against new enemy targets detected by reconnaissance and, first and foremost against his troops advancing and deploying for the offensive.

329. When troops go over to the defense in the course of an offensive, the defensive operation will begin immediately with the repelling of enemy attacks, during which we will be carrying out the movement forward and deployment of our forces and means

and establishing a defensive troop grouping in conformity with the decision adopted, and also carrying out the engineer preparation of our positions, the setting up of antitank obstacles, the establishing of zones of demolitions and obstacles on the axes of attacks of the enemy's groupings, and the elimination of the aftereffects of his nuclear strikes and use of chemical weapons. Resolute and resourceful actions of troops, commanders, and staffs under these conditions are a guarantee of success in rapidly organizing the defense and accomplishing the disruption of the enemy offensive.

For the purposes of preventing the advance of enemy groupings on the offensive and of retaining favorable terrain areas on the most important axes it is necessary to rapidly move motorized rifle (armored) and tank divisions forward into these areas. On separate axes, and simultaneously with the hitting of enemy targets, zones of radioactive and chemical contamination may be established.

In a number of cases, while our divisions are moving forward to their designated areas, meeting battles with enemy forward units may develop. Under these conditions, it is necessary to deliver powerful strikes by fire against the enemy and rout him with rapid offensive actions. The main thing is to preempt the enemy in whatever actions, to seize the initiative, and to impose our will on him.

330. Under conditions when the enemy's going over to the offensive is preceded by the forward movement and deployment of his forces, the strikes against him by front (army) means must be delivered successively, starting at the distant approaches to the defense.

Against enemy groupings concentrating for the offensive, a counterpreparation is carried out with the involvement of missile units, aircraft, artillery, and tanks.

In those cases when the enemy's main grouping is concentrating for the offensive at a considerable distance from the forward edge of the defense, a counterpreparation against it is carried out by delivering strikes with missile large units (units) and aviation.

The counterpreparation fire must be initiated by surprise and it must prevent the enemy from using nuclear weapons and carrying out an aviation and artillery preparation against the defending troops.

331. Before carrying out the counterpreparation, the front (army) commander, on the basis of newly obtained reconnaissance data on the enemy, will define more precisely: against which enemy troop groupings and with what number of warheads to deliver nuclear strikes as well as the strikes with other types of fire means; the targets to be struck by missile large units (units), aviation, and artillery; the make-up and duration of the counterpreparation; the readiness time of the allocated means; and the procedure for cooperation among them.

In case there are plans to have combined-arms large units attack in front of the forward edge of the defense following the counterpreparation, then he also defines more precisely the axes of their attacks, their combat tasks, and the measures to comprehensively support their actions; and the main forces are brought to readiness to go over to the offensive on the given axis.

An attack by motorized rifle (armored) and tank large units, if one is undertaken, is carried out following the counterpreparation. The combined-arms large units, after going over to the offensive, resolutely break into the enemy's battle formations, which have been disorganized by the counterpreparation, and complete his final defeat. The successful combat actions of the large units allocated for the attack in front of the forward edge can be intensified by committing the second echelons and reserves of the army (corps). Advantageous areas (lines) which have been captured are immediately consolidated.

332. Simultaneously with the actions to disrupt the enemy's offensive or to weaken his main grouping, and as we discover his axes of offensive, measures are undertaken to strengthen the defense on these axes. These measures include: defining more precisely the tasks of the troops and the procedure for maneuvering forces and means; increasing the density of antitank means and obstacles; improving the engineer preparation of the terrain, setting up additional zones of obstacles and

demolitions, and preparing new routes for troop maneuvering. Furthermore, we can change the disposition areas of second echelons and reserves, of launching (firing) positions, of control posts, and also move troops out of contaminated areas or out of areas located in the direction of movement of the radioactive cloud.

All measures to strengthen the defense and change troop disposition areas, positions, and control posts must be carried out rapidly and covertly.

333. On the enemy's going over to the offensive, defending troops direct their main efforts toward rapidly and decisively routing his grouping within the confines of the defense zone of first-echelon large units, and also toward destroying airborne landing forces landed by him.

This is achieved by massed missile, aviation, and artillery strikes, by having first-echelon units and large units tenaciously hold key positions and important terrain areas on the axes of the offensive of the enemy troops, and also by carrying out surprise counterattacks and counterthrusts with second echelons and reserves.

334. In the course of a defensive operation (battle), the front or army commander (corps commander) must continuously keep track of the situation and with timeliness organize and monitor the conduct of measures to protect the troops and eliminate the aftereffects of the enemy's use of nuclear weapons and other means of mass destruction.

For this purpose, the condition of the troops subjected to enemy nuclear strikes and chemical and bacteriological attacks is ascertained as is also the level and scope of the radioactive, chemical, and bacteriological contamination of the troops, rear services installations, and terrain; disrupted control and cooperation, especially between rocket troops and combined-arms large units, is restored and their combat tasks are refined; division, corps, army, and front reserves are rapidly moved into the areas subjected to nuclear strikes; troops are moved out of areas with high levels of radiation; and the disposition areas of those troops threatened with the danger of injury by radioactive and toxic agents are changed.

Rescue work, the clearing of routes for troop maneuvering, and the transport, evacuation, and decontamination of personnel as well as the chemical and radioactive decontamination of weapons and combat equipment, are carried out by all branch arms, primarily in those areas where this will not result in a weakening of the efforts of the troops engaged in intense combat actions to repel enemy attacks and to destroy his airborne landing forces.

335. When the enemy penetrates the defense, first-echelon large units, firmly holding on to favorable areas and lines on the most important axes and using fire of all types and decisive counterattacks, inflict the maximum possible losses on his troops on the offensive, split up their battle formations, delay their advance into the depth, and create conditions for their final defeat during the delivery of counterattacks.

The successful rout of an enemy penetrating the defense is achieved, first of all, by resolutely hitting his tank groupings. To do this, against them we deliver nuclear and aviation strikes and concentrate the main mass of fire of our artillery, tank, and antitank means. Simultaneously with this, we move our subunits and units of antitank guided missiles and our antitank reserves and mobile obstacle detachments forward to the axes of offensive of the enemy tank groupings; these, in cooperation with the antitank means of the defending units and subunits, destroy the enemy tanks and do not permit them to penetrate into the depth of the defense.

Engineer troops strengthen the engineer obstacles on the threatened axes, carry out demolitions, and detonate controlled minefields when enemy tanks get into them.

On axes where the enemy is striving to break through into the depth of the defense through the gaps between first-echelon large units (units) or to envelop from the flanks areas defended by them, his troops on the offensive are destroyed by nuclear strikes, aviation, artillery fire, and counterattacks of the reserves as well as by attacks of troops regrouped from secondary axes.

Under conditions when it is inadvisable, or impossible, to conduct counterattacks, the second echelons, reserves, and

regrouped units of first-echelon divisions quickly deploy on advantageous lines and with the fire of tanks, artillery, and small arms, inflict damage on the enemy and contain his advance safeguarding the advance and deployment of second-echelon large units and reserves in order to carry out a counterattack.

336. While repelling an enemy attack, the front or army commander (corps commander) directs reconnaissance efforts toward detecting the enemy means of mass destruction, aircraft on airfields, radiotechnical means, and control posts, and adopts measures to destroy them immediately with nuclear strikes and strikes of aviation and long-range artillery, by using reconnaissance groups as well as subunits and units of his own troops which find themselves in the enemy rear during the combat actions. In certain cases, tactical airborne landing forces may be dropped to accomplish this task.

337. Combat against enemy airborne landing forces is carried out with nuclear strikes and actions of aviation against the transport aviation on the airfields, against the airborne troops in their departure areas for the landing, and while they are boarding the aircraft. During the flight to the landing area, airborne landing forces are destroyed by fighter aviation, surface-to-air means, and -- at low altitudes -- by small arms fire.

To destroy airborne landing forces after they have been dropped (landed), reserves located nearby, primarily tank large units and units, are immediately moved forward, and in case of need, nuclear weapons can be used.

Troop actions when destroying enemy airborne landing forces must be rapid and resolute so as to prevent the landing force from assembling after the landing, from consolidating itself on the terrain, and from seizing our rocket troop siting areas, control posts, materiel depots, bridges, and other important installations in the landing area.

338. Units and large units which find themselves in the rear of an enemy on the offensive, as well as those which have been caught in an encirclement, are obligated to tie down by their aggressive actions as many enemy troops on the offensive as possible and not allow their own troop battle formations to be

split up.

The front or army commander (corps commander) supports the actions of these large units with nuclear strikes and aviation, organizes the delivery of necessary means to them, and authorizes them to break out of the enemy rear only when the conduct of further combat actions by them there is not advantageous.

339. In the course of a defensive engagement, the front or army commander (corps commander) coordinates the actions of the first-echelon large units, directs the destruction of airborne landing forces, and refines the tasks and methods of action of the front or army main forces to rout enemy groupings on the offensive.

The front (army) commander concentrates his principal attention on controlling the rocket troops, aircraft, and first-echelon large units, directing their efforts toward repelling enemy attacks on the decisive axes. When necessary, he undertakes measures to reinforce first-echelon large units by resubordinating to them a portion of the forces and means from the reserve or by maneuvering from other axes.

For the purpose of carrying out a troop maneuver with timeliness, measures are taken to quickly restore destroyed road sections, bridges, and crossings on the axes of troop movement, and the negotiation or bypassing of contaminated terrain sectors and sectors of destruction is organized.

Transport aircraft and helicopters can be used to lift troops across zones of dangerous radioactive contamination of the terrain.

340. The rout of enemy groupings that have broken into the depth of the defense is accomplished by nuclear strikes, the fire of conventional means, and troop counterthrusts.

When choosing the moment to deliver a counterthrust, we take into account the situation that has developed and the possibility it will change by the time the counterthrust is initiated, the distance separating the location of the combined-arms large units from their deployment lines, and the time required to prepare the nuclear warheads and the means of using them.

It is advantageous to deliver the counterthrust when the enemy is disorganized as a result of the strikes delivered against him and his battle formations have been disrupted.

341. To deliver an army counterthrust, we allocate army missile means, divisions from the second echelon and the combined-arms reserve, a portion of the first-echelon troops, and supporting aviation.

To carry out a front counterthrust, we allocate rocket troop large units and units, the air army, front reserves or the front's second-echelon army, and also a portion of the forces of the first-echelon armies.

The disposition of troops for the delivery of a counterthrust must ensure rapid exploitation of the results of employing nuclear weapons, delivery of a powerful first strike, and the final defeat of the enemy troops on the offensive in a short time. Tank large units usually are employed in the first echelon and on the decisive axes.

342. In his decision on the conduct of counterthrusts, the front (army) commander, in conformity with the developing situation, defines more precisely: the composition and grouping of the forces allocated for the counterthrust; the objectives, the times, and the methods for the delivery of nuclear strikes by rocket troops and aviation as well as the targets to be hit with chemical weapons and conventional means; the lines of deployment, the axes of the attacks, the tasks of the formations (large units), and the procedure for the artillery and air support of the troops, the measures for comprehensive support of the counterthrust, and the time in which the troops are to be ready.

The cooperation of the forces and means participating in the counterthrust is organized at the same time tasks are refined or new ones assigned to the troops. In doing so, special attention is devoted to coordinating the actions of formations (large units) with rocket troops and aviation.

343. The strikes of rocket troops and aviation with the use of nuclear and chemical weapons or conventional means of destruction are prepared and delivered against the main forces of the enemy's grouping that has broken through, his nuclear attack

means, approaching reserves, principal groupings of artillery, control posts, and aviation on airfields.

The targets for nuclear strikes are planned taking into account possible changes in position of the enemy and one's own troops by the beginning of the counterthrust.

In a counterthrust, artillery is called upon primarily to destroy and neutralize the enemy's tactical missiles, artillery, control posts, and first-echelon troops. Missile large units and aviation are used to hit deeper targets.

344. The axes of counterthrusts are selected depending on the goal of the counterthrusts and on the situation developing during the defensive engagement, taking into account the nature of the terrain and the possibility of rapid movement and deployment of troops to deliver a counterthrust and to exploit it swiftly. In doing so, we take into account the zones of destruction and of dangerous radioactive contamination, the zones contaminated with toxic agents, the prepared lines of deployment the areas held firmly by defending troops, and the position of the troops continuing to wage combat in the enemy rear. It is advantageous to deliver the counterthrust against one or both flanks of the enemy's main grouping on the offensive, with a subsequent breakthrough into its rear. It can also be delivered frontally for the purpose of splintering and destroying the enemy in detail.

345. The troop grouping for the counterthrust is formed and moved covertly to the line of deployment, carrying out all security measures. To do this it is necessary to organize a reliable air defense of the troops intended for the counterthrust; to carry out the movement of the large units and units in dispersed formations and utilizing the hours of darkness; to carry out decoy troop movements and other measures to deceive the enemy; to conduct continuous radiation, engineer, and chemical reconnaissance on the movement routes and on the lines of deployment; and to organize road support and efficient provost and traffic control service.

346. The main efforts of air defense are concentrated on covering the main troop grouping allocated to deliver the counterthrust. For this purpose, the surface-to-air means

subordinate to the front (army) are regrouped. Surface-to-air missile means capable of combating the air enemy at low altitudes occupy firing positions on the troop movement routes and lines of deployment.

Fighter aviation cover for the troops usually is carried out by the fighters on airborne alert and airfield alert status.

347. The counterthrust must be delivered by surprise, with deployment of the large units from the march, and begin, as a rule, with a powerful nuclear strike and an artillery and air strike against the main enemy grouping. The troops are supported by artillery fire and air strikes employing quick-acting toxic agents and conventional warheads.

The actions of the combined-arms large units participating in the counterthrust must have a resolute character, they must be conducted without stopping, at high rates, with the utmost exertion of efforts, and to the entire depth of the assigned task. To quickly advance and deliver attacks on the flanks and rear of the enemy groupings, the troops on the offensive immediately exploit the results of the fire (nuclear) strikes of missile large units, artillery, and aviation, as well as gaps and breaks in the operational disposition of the enemy troops.

The buildup of efforts in the course of a counterthrust is carried out by successive missile, artillery, and air strikes using nuclear and conventional means, by committing to the engagement large units that have been regrouped from secondary axes or are approaching from the depth, and also by having those troops which are defending on the flanks of the enemy groupings against which counterthrusts are being delivered go over to the offensive.

Special attention is devoted to disrupting enemy measures directed toward countering our counterthrust and to reliably safeguarding the flanks of the large units on the offensive. For this purpose, we increase reconnaissance and deliver missile and air strikes against newly detected nuclear means of the enemy and against his approaching reserves and troops being regrouped from other axes. Antitank reserves and mobile obstacle detachments are deployed on the flanks of the large units on the offensive, and engineer obstacles are set up. Special attention is devoted

to organizing the protection of the troops against weapons of mass destruction.

348. On those axes where a counterthrust takes the form of a meeting engagement, it will be very important to preempt the enemy in the delivery of nuclear strikes and in the deployment of large units and units in battle formation; and it will also be very important for commanders at all levels and for the troops to act boldly, resolutely, and with initiative.

Success attained at the beginning of a meeting engagement is immediately exploited to the final defeat of the enemy groupings and approaching reserves.

349. In the course of a defensive engagement, the front or army commander (corps commander) continuously controls the troops since he is located, as a rule, at the command post.

Changing the location of control posts is done when firm and continuous control of the main forces and means cannot be exercised from them, and also when the threat arises that enemy groupings on the offensive will break through into the areas where they are located or when the areas in which they are located have become contaminated with radioactive and toxic agents.

The relocation of control posts must be carried out rapidly, with observation of camouflage measures and, as a rule, when communications are ready in the new location. Air transport is used extensively to transfer control post personnel to a new area.

350. As a result of aggressive troop actions during the defensive engagement, favorable conditions should be brought about for going over to a counteroffensive or for the resumption of offensive actions.

The preparation of a counteroffensive usually is carried out during the defensive engagement and in a short period of time; this requires of the command and staffs great efficiency in work and foresight regarding the development of the operation.

For the purposes of preparing a counteroffensive, in the course of the defensive engagement it is necessary: to take measures to stockpile nuclear warheads and other materiel; to position large units coming into the complement of the front (army) in such a manner as to ensure they can rapidly go over to the offensive without carrying out complex regroupings, to carry out a maneuver with forces and means for the purpose of establishing troop groupings for the offensive, to organize their coverage against air strikes and their protection against weapons of mass destruction; to adopt the decision for the offensive and assign tasks to the troops in a timely way; to plan the offensive and organize the cooperation of the troops and their comprehensive support; to refine the organization of troop control; and to maintain the high morale of the troops.

The regrouping, concentration, and deployment of the troops intended for going over to a counteroffensive must be carried out covertly, in a short period of time, with reliable coverage against air strikes and firm holding of lines which safeguard the concentration and deployment of troops.

The building up of forces and establishing of reserves of materiel and technical means for the counteroffensive must be carried on throughout the entire defensive operation.

A counteroffensive, as a rule, will be initiated immediately after a counterthrust and is its continuation. In certain cases, it may be initiated following a brief pause required to complete the main preparatory measures.

The going over of troops to the offensive must be done with surprise and as simultaneously as possible on all of the planned axes. At the beginning of the offensive, powerful nuclear strikes are delivered in conjunction with air strikes and artillery fire against the enemy's troop groupings, his reserves, missile sites, control posts, and main airfields.

An offensive that has been initiated is conducted at a high rate of advance continuously day and night. First-echelon tank and motorized rifle (armored) large units, exploiting the results of nuclear strikes and with the support of artillery fire and air strikes, rapidly advance into the depth of the enemy's disposition, break out into the flanks and rear of his groupings,

and, in cooperation with airborne landing forces, split them up and destroy them in detail.

Characteristics of a defense on coastal axes

351. A defense on coastal axes is carried out by a front or army (corps) in cooperation with naval forces and large units of the Air Defense Forces of the Country. In this case, the front or army (corps) may defend the seacoast and a land sector simultaneously or only the seacoast.

The main goals of the defense are: to disrupt a landing operation, to repel the offensive of the enemy's ground forces grouping along the coast, to repel his naval and air strikes, to destroy amphibious and airborne landing forces, and to hold the occupied sector of the seacoast and the land front.

352. The successful conduct of a defense on coastal axes depends on the coordinated actions of all forces and means participating in it. This is achieved: by unity of control; by proper allocation of tasks among ground forces, naval forces, aviation, and Air Defense Forces of the Country, and continuous cooperation among them; by a common understanding of the goal of the operation and of the tasks to be accomplished by the forces and means of the various branches of the armed forces; by organizing and maintaining stable cooperation communications; and by carrying out measures for the comprehensive support of the operation based on a unified plan.

The front or army commander (corps commander) exercises control of the combat actions personally or through his staff and the representatives of the forces and means of the other branches of the armed forces participating in the defense.

353. Formations (large units) of the various branches of the armed forces in a defense on coastal axes fulfil the following main tasks.

Front and army (corps) troops engage in combat with the enemy's nuclear means and aviation, destroy his landing forces and ground forces, and hold the occupied sectors of the seacoast and islands. As they do this, operational-tactical missile large units (units) and front aviation can be allocated to deliver

strikes against enemy ports and naval bases. The main efforts of ground forces are concentrated on axes accessible for the landing of enemy landing forces and on holding important areas, road junctions, commanding heights, and other objectives on these axes which ensure the splitting up and destruction in detail of an enemy landing force.

Large units of the Navy conduct reconnaissance at sea, destroy the enemy's naval forces at sea and in bases, destroy his amphibious landing forces at sea, and disrupt maritime traffic; they support the actions of ground forces when these are repelling enemy strikes in the land sector of a front, and cover their own maritime traffic.

Large units of the Air Defense Forces of the Country cover against enemy air attacks our troop groupings, transportation routes, the rear area of the front (army), naval bases, ports and ship basing areas, and also destroy enemy airborne landing forces in the air.

354. The operational disposition of front (army) troops during a defense on a coastal axis depend on the tasks, the characteristics and length of the seacoast and land sector to be defended, the available forces and means, and the capacity of the probable axes of the landing of amphibious landing forces. This disposition may include: a first echelon, and sometimes a second echelon, large units (units) of rocket troops and aviation, a grouping of air defense forces and means, and various-purpose reserves.

When there is no second echelon, the combined-arms reserve must be considerably stronger than under ordinary circumstances and must be positioned in areas ensuring its rapid maneuver to any threatened axis.

Under conditions when a front (army) is simultaneously defending a seacoast and a land sector, the grouping of forces and means must ensure the enemy is routed should he simultaneously go over to an offensive on the land sector and land an amphibious landing force.

355. When organizing the defense of a coast, special attention is devoted to the preparation of coordinated nuclear

strikes by front (army) and fleet means against the concentration and loading-up areas of amphibious and airborne landing forces, against ships carrying the landing force in sea transit, and against enemy transport aviation on the airfields.

The artillery and tanks of first-echelon large units must be ready to concentrate their fire against the enemy landing force at sea at maximum ranges and also to immediately advance to previously prepared firing positions in order to destroy amphibious landing means by direct firing as they approach the shore. Artillery and tank fire must be tied in with the system of obstacles in the water and on the shore.

356. The system of engineer preparation of the terrain on the coast is coordinated with the defense of naval bases, ports and cities. To ensure the maneuvering of second echelons and reserves along the coast and from the depth, a road network is prepared.

On the most important coastal sectors suitable for the landing of amphibious landing forces, and on possible axes of their actions after landing, the troops prepare defense areas and sectors, erect obstacles, and prepare demolitions.

On the approaches to the sectors which are suitable for the landing of amphibious landing forces, naval and ground forces establish a system of antilanding obstacles in the water and on the shore.

357. Upon receiving reconnaissance data on the concentration of landing force troops and assault transports, nuclear strikes and strikes by bomber and naval missile-carrying aviation, as well as by submarines, are delivered against them for the purpose of weakening the landing forces and disrupting the enemy's landing operation at its very inception. When delivering such strikes, front (army) and fleet forces and means should be used en masse to accomplish the most important tasks.

If, owing to conditions of the situation, it does not seem possible to inflict a decisive defeat on the enemy landing force in its concentration and embarkation areas, then strikes are delivered against it during sea transit. Transports with troops are the main targets for the delivery of these strikes. As the

landing force nears the landing area, the power of the strikes against them should be continuously increased.

At the same time that strikes are delivered against enemy landing forces in sea transit, the tasks of the troops are refined and measures are carried out to strengthen the defense on the threatened axes.

358. Routing the landing force while it is approaching the shore and during the period it is landing on the shore is accomplished by the joint efforts of the ground forces, navy, and aviation. In those cases when the enemy is using large transports to land the landing force, the most advantageous conditions for the destruction of the landing force arise at the time troops and equipment are being loaded from the transports into landing craft and when they are moving to the shore.

The artillery and tanks of first-echelon large units must be ready to concentrate their fire at maximum ranges against the enemy landing force at sea and also to immediately move out to previously prepared firing positions to destroy landing means. Artillery and tank fire must be tied in with the system of antilanding obstacles.

Enemy landing force troops that have landed on the shore are destroyed by the fire means of the ground forces and by aviation. During this period it is particularly important not to allow the enemy amphibious landing force to consolidate itself on the shore or to build up its efforts by landing subsequent echelons or by linking up with an airborne landing force.

For these purposes, against the amphibious landing force we deliver nuclear strikes and air and artillery strikes using conventional means of destruction and chemical warheads, and we also carry out decisive counterattacks and counterthrusts with reserves and troops taken away from sectors of the coast not under attack in order to destroy the enemy forces that have landed.

Enemy airborne landing forces that have been landed are sealed off and destroyed without delay by nuclear strikes, strikes of aviation, and attacks of tank and motorized rifle (armored) large units (units).

The fleet's main efforts while the landing forces are being routed on the shore are concentrated on destroying the enemy's support ships and the subsequent echelons of his landing force.

359. Under conditions when the enemy delivers an attack in the land sector of the front and simultaneously carries out the landing of an amphibious landing force, we can destroy him simultaneously or in succession. In doing so, in all cases, we concentrate our principal efforts on routing those enemy forces whose actions constitute the greatest threat to the stability of our defense. A counterthrust is delivered against the principal enemy grouping on the offensive in the land sector of the front or against the enemy landing force developing the offensive into the depth.

360. During the counterthrust against an amphibious landing force, its final defeat must be carried out by a resolute pursuit in order to prevent the enemy from withdrawing to embarkation points and to cut off the evacuation of the landing forces.

The destruction of the naval forces supporting the enemy amphibious landing force, and also of the enemy withdrawing by sea, is accomplished by submarines and surface ships and by strikes by rocket troops and aviation.

Characteristics of a defense in mountain, desert, and northern areas

361. Defensive operations conducted in mountain, desert, and northern areas have a number of common characteristics, the principal ones being:

-- the defense, as a rule, is established on axes accessible to an enemy offensive with the presence of extensive gaps not occupied by troops;

-- the assigned defense zones are wider and the operational disposition of the troops will most often be in a single echelon with strong reserves present;

-- the engineer preparation of the terrain requires a greater expenditure of time and the use of special means of mechanization;

-- the difficulty of transport necessitates the previous establishment of increased reserves of materiel among the troops.

362. Defense in mountains on axes accessible to the actions of enemy ground forces is established more deeply and in multiple layers. In doing so, special attention must be devoted to organizing a strong all-around defense of mountain passes, commanding heights, road junctions, inhabited localities, and also to safeguarding the flanks.

The forward edge of the defense of first-echelon large units can be selected on the slopes of mountain ranges, on the most advantageous mountain heights and spurs, as well as on lines ensuring that valleys are reliably covered.

Gaps not occupied by troops which are accessible to the advance of troops are covered by obstacles and must be monitored by reconnaissance.

363. In the first echelon of the operational disposition of troops it is advisable to have motorized rifle (armored) divisions. As a rule, tank large units and units are allocated to the second echelons and reserves.

Second echelons and reserves must be positioned on the most important axes, dispersed, and in areas ensuring the possibility of rapidly carrying out a maneuver on any threatened axis. A portion of the second-echelon forces and means and the reserves must be ready to be airlifted.

364. It is most expedient to use nuclear and chemical weapons against enemy troops massed in valleys, gorges, and in passes. Furthermore, nuclear strikes can be delivered against structures, installations, and areas whose destruction or contamination will create grave difficulties for enemy troops on the offensive.

365. Operational-tactical missile large units (units) and front aviation usually are positioned in areas from which they can maneuver to all the main axes. In a number of cases, units of missile large units, as well as fighter and fighter-bomber large units (units) of the air army, can be operationally subordinated to armies, and sometimes to corps, defending

isolated axes.

Artillery is deployed with its principal forces on the most important axes and extensively carries out maneuver of fire. Army artillery and reinforcing artillery usually are attached to combined-arms large units.

366. Engineer troops, in addition to fulfilling the usual tasks, are called upon to construct suspension cableways across mountain rivers and gorges, and also to carry out measures requiring the use of special engineer equipment and explosives.

The requirement for engineer equipment and explosives increases considerably in a defense in the mountains.

367. When organizing air defense in mountain conditions, air defense forces and means are used, as a rule, to cover troop groupings operating separately, rocket troop siting areas, and other important objectives. Furthermore, air defense forces and means must be allocated to cover defiles and passes in the zone of defense.

368. When organizing a defense in mountains one should take into account the possibility of mountain landslides with nuclear bursts and the development of higher concentrations of toxic agents in ravines and valleys, as well as the difficulty of finding routes bypassing terrain sectors contaminated with radioactive and toxic agents.

369. Disrupting the enemy's offensive during the concentration and deployment of his troops is achieved by nuclear strikes, air strikes, and artillery fire against groupings concentrating in valleys, gorges, and hollows, and also against mountain passes, crossings, and bridges on the approaches to the defense.

370. For defensive operations to be successful in the mountains, it is important for troops to tenaciously hold commanding heights, mountain passes, and road junctions in conjunction with decisive counterattacks. Counterattacks usually are conducted along roads, valleys, and ridges.

In view of the limited number of roads and the difficulty of troop maneuvering, especially at night, the conduct of counterthrusts in mountain areas requires, as a rule, troops to be deployed ahead of time on previously prepared lines. Counterthrusts launched along wide valleys or on large mountain plateaus can be carried out with the troops deploying from the march.

371. Control posts are established in areas providing camouflage against enemy air reconnaissance and ensuring stable control over the main grouping of the defending troops. On secondary axes it is advisable to set up auxiliary control posts.

372. Defense in desert areas is organized by separate axes at great distances from one another.

Under these conditions, the defense of units and large units must as a rule, be established in an all-around form. Reconnaissance and observation are organized in the gaps between the axes to be defended.

The main efforts of front or army (corps) troops are concentrated on the most important operational axes which lead toward vitally important areas and permit the widespread use of all branch arms. On these axes the defense is established as under ordinary conditions.

To cover secondary axes, we prepare missile, air, and long range artillery strikes and allocate mobile subunits and units.

In deserts with sand hills and dunes which are difficult to traverse, the defense zones (areas) assigned to large units are wider than in deserts where easily traversed terrain predominates.

When organizing the defense, special attention is devoted to covering oases, sources of water, and inhabited localities.

373. The disposition of the troops in the defense will be characterized by the establishment of independent groupings on the main axes, with strong reserves available and positioned in greater depth than under ordinary conditions and in areas ensuring rapid maneuver to any threatened axis.

374. Nuclear and chemical weapons can be used primarily to destroy the enemy's nuclear means, his aviation on airfields, and to destroy hydrotechnical structures, and also to deliver strikes against the enemy's main groupings in inhabited localities and in the areas of oases and sources of water.

375. Rocket troops and aviation, besides fulfilling the usual tasks, are used to destroy and contaminate water supply points and fuel supply bases.

In certain cases units of missile large units, as well as of fighter and fighter-bomber aviation, can be operationally subordinated to armies (corps) operating on independent axes.

376. Air defense is organized taking into account the necessity of reliably covering against air strikes not only troop groupings, control posts, and important rear services installations, but also sources of water, oases, and routes for materiel delivery and evacuation.

All units and large units situated in the rear area are made ready to combat enemy airborne landing forces.

377. We organize the protection of the troops against weapons of mass destruction taking into account the possibility of the spread of radioactive and toxic agents with clouds of dust and shifting sands and also taking into account the limited possibilities of preparing protective shelters.

When organizing protection against weapons of mass destruction, special attention must be devoted to safeguarding the groupings covering the most important axes as well as oases and sources of water. In so doing, special attention must be devoted to the dispersal of the troops and to their provision with prefabricated structures for setting up protective shelters, to the protection of sources of water against contamination, to the decontamination and purification of water, to the conduct of radiation, chemical, and bacteriological reconnaissance in oases, in areas of sources of water, and in inhabited localities; to the protection of personnel and combat equipment against dust when negotiating contaminated zones, and also to sanitary-prophylactic measures and the procedure for carrying out decontamination treatment of the troops.

378. When preparing and conducting a defensive operation in desert areas, it is important to organize the provision of water to the troops. For this purpose we carry out reconnaissance of sources of water, install and drill wells, and establish reserves of water in subunits and units and also on motor vehicles and tanks. The sources of water are distributed among units and large units and their protection is organized.

The most important task of engineer troops is to construct water supply points.

379. In a defense in the desert front or army (corps) control posts usually are echeloned in greater depth than under normal conditions, and when necessary, provisions are made to also establish auxiliary control posts.

In the communications system of an army, along with the primary and auxiliary communications centers, relay points can be set up for the purpose of providing the necessary range of communications.

380. During a defense in deserts, rear services units and facilities are situated on the main axes near sources of water. In doing so, it is necessary to keep in mind that the limited local resources, especially of water and fuel, and the lack of construction materials and natural camouflage can put a considerable strain on the work of rear services organs. Under these conditions, in addition to establishing increased reserves of materiel ahead of time directly among the troops, measures are taken to ensure uninterrupted supply and evacuation. To do this, extensive use should be made, along with motor vehicle transport, of transport aviation and helicopters, and -- to deliver fuel -- of pipelines.

381. Of special importance during a defensive operation in desert areas is the maneuvering of nuclear strikes, aviation, artillery fire, and troops to the decisive axes in conjunction with the firm holding of strongpoints and centers of defense covering oases and sources of water.

The rapid and resolute maneuvering of forces and means and the conduct of counterattacks and counterthrusts are the principal method of conducting defensive operations in desert

areas.

382. Defense in northern areas is organized by separate axes leading toward vitally important areas and also on sectors of the seacoast for the purposes of holding naval bases, ports, airfields, and other important installations.

A deeply echeloned defense is established only on axes accessible to an offensive. On secondary sectors and in terrain sectors of difficult accessibility, we set up individual defense areas and centers. In the gaps between axes to be defended we organize reconnaissance and observation. To cover sectors of the front not occupied by troops, it is necessary to have in readiness troops specially equipped to operate off roads, in deep snow, and in swampy areas.

383. Nuclear and chemical weapons are used principally against enemy troop groupings on the offensive on important axes, against nuclear attack means, airfields, railroad stations, road junctions, and also to destroy enemy amphibious and airborne landing forces landed in areas not occupied by troops.

384. Front missile and aviation large units and units can be attached in operational subordination to armies, and in certain cases to corps also, defending on separate and distant axes.

Aviation must be prepared to operate under difficult arctic conditions. The limited number of airfields and the difficulty of preparing them in northern areas requires them to be reliably covered against enemy air strikes and also requires that the maneuver of aviation from one axis to another be carefully prepared in advance. Under winter conditions, frozen water basins should be used extensively to prepare airfields.

Artillery is used primarily along roads. In wintertime it must be ready to conduct fire under conditions of limited visibility and the polar night.

385. The engineer preparation of the terrain in a defense in northern areas demands great efforts from all branch arms and primarily from engineer troops. The necessity of constructing defense works under conditions of rocky, frozen, and swampy

ground increases the demand for special means of mechanization and for explosives.

In addition to the usual engineer support measures, it is necessary to provide for snow removal from and maintenance in constant readiness of roads, airfields, and engineer obstacles, for the construction of water supply points, and for heating for personnel.

386. To disrupt an enemy offensive it is very important to destroy nuclear attack means in good time and to systematically deliver strikes with missiles, aviation, and long-range artillery fire against enemy troops while they are moving and when they are located in unprepared concentration areas. On the most important axes a counterpreparation can be conducted against the enemy troops being readied for an offensive; and, in a number of cases, for the purpose of hampering the enemy offensive, it is expedient to destroy the ice on river lines and to keep it destroyed.

387. The success of counterattacks and counterthrusts against the enemy will depend to a considerable degree on advance preparation and maintenance of the routes for the movement of troops to their lines of deployment.

The rout of enemy groupings on the offensive in the course of counterattacks and counterthrusts will be accomplished in most cases by a frontal attack along the main roads with a simultaneous landing of tactical amphibious and airborne landing forces in the enemy rear.

The main efforts of air defense forces and means are concentrated on coverage against air strikes of separate important objectives: main troop groupings, siting areas of missile large units and units, naval bases, airfields, control posts and rear services facilities.

388. When organizing radio communications it is necessary to take into account the strong interference caused by the proximity of the magnetic pole. Therefore, to control troops we should extensively use longwave radio sets, wire means, aircraft and helicopters, propeller-driven sleds, and also animal sled teams.

389. The materiel-technical support of troops in a defensive operation in northern areas is organized with due regard for the necessity of supplying troops with warm clothing, heated tents, propeller-driven sleds, and sled-and-ski equipment. Combat equipment must have heaters and be supplied with special fuel and lubricants. Personnel are provided with specially prescribed rations.

The defense of major inhabited localities (cities)

390. When organizing the defense of major inhabited localities (cities) it is necessary to take into account that they are one of the most probable targets of enemy nuclear strikes. Therefore, as a rule, we should refrain from situating troops in them and from carrying out the defense directly within the inhabited locality (city).

391. The defense of a city should be all-around and moved out beyond its boundaries. To do this, on the approaches to the city on the most important axes of an enemy offensive we set up defense areas (zones), prepare rocket troop and air strikes, establish engineer obstacles, and prepare demolitions.

Defense areas (zones) prepared on the distant and immediate approaches to the city and the strikes by fire must ensure the possibility of routing advancing enemy groupings before they draw near the city. The distance between defense areas (zones) in terms of frontage and depth depends on the forces and means available, the nature of terrain on the approaches to the city, and the importance of the city in the overall system of defense.

392. When it is necessary to organize the defense directly within the city, we establish centers of resistance on the main axes of troop actions and in the areas of the city's important installations. The number of centers of defense is determined on the basis of the composition of the troops intended to conduct combat actions in the city, the size of the city, and nature of its layout.

The backbone of centers of resistance must consist of strongpoints prepared for an all-around defense and having fire coordination with one another.

393. The main forces and means of the defending troops, including tank large units and units, must be situated beyond the city limits and employed for counterattacks and counterthrusts against enveloping enemy groupings. For the immediate defense of the city we should allocate the minimum necessary amount of forces and means, primarily motorized rifle (armored) large units (units), which, before contact is made with the enemy under conditions of the threat of nuclear strikes, must be positioned beyond the city limits in readiness to occupy the centers and strongpoints prepared for the defense.

As a rule, operational-tactical missile large units and units as well as the bulk of army artillery and reinforcing artillery are positioned outside the city.

394. Nuclear and chemical weapons are used primarily to deliver strikes against the enemy's main groupings endeavoring to seize or envelop the city.

395. The characteristics of engineer support of troop combat actions in the defense of a city are: the adaptation for the defense of individual city buildings, blocks, and industrial establishments and structures; the preparation and maintenance of routes for troop maneuvering, the establishment of mixed minefields and other obstacles on the approaches to the city and immediately within it; the preparation of bridges, subway stations and tunnels, and other important installations of the city for demolition; and the preparation of landing sites for helicopters and aircraft.

396. Defensive operations on the approaches to the city are carried out the same way as under the usual conditions. As this is done, decisive measures are taken to prevent the encirclement of the city or its capture from the march. As a rule, counterthrusts will be conducted against enemy groupings endeavoring to envelop the city.

Should the enemy encircle the city, for the successful waging of combat it will be very important to retain firm control over the troops, to strictly ration expenditures and replenish materiel with timeliness, to maneuver forces and means rapidly to the threatened axes, and to maintain the high political morale of the troops.

397. When organizing the protection of the troops against weapons of mass destruction, it is necessary:

-- to use underground structures, basements, and city shelters to protect personnel and reserves of materiel;

-- to provide for the use of local means to eliminate the aftereffects of an enemy attack;

-- to take into account the possibility that contaminated air will settle in underground structures, buildings, and closed blocks and spread through the ventilation and sewage systems as well as through subway tunnels.

-- to provide for the allocation of forces and means to clear away obstructions, carry out rescue work, and extinguish fires;

-- to take into account the possibility the enemy may employ bacteriological means by subversive methods to contaminate water and reserves of food.

To provide aid to the troops in erecting shelters and eliminating the aftereffects of an enemy attack, the local populace is widely enlisted, and in case of need, troop forces and means are allocated to help the population, especially to carry out emergency rescue work, extinguish fires, clear away obstructions and cave-ins, provide medical aid, and evacuate the injured.

398. The defense inside the city is carried out both by retreating troops and by large units and units specially allocated for this purpose from the complement of second echelons and reserves, which rapidly occupy previously prepared centers of resistance and strongpoints before the enemy approaches the outskirts of the city, and repel enemy attempts to break into the city.

Combat actions in a city usually will be characterized by scattered centers of fighting. Defending troops, firmly holding individual structures, city blocks, and centers of resistance, split up the enemy's attacking groupings and by fire of all types and by counterattacks, destroy them in detail.

Troop withdrawal

399. A troop withdrawal is conducted only upon the order or authorization of the superior commander. The purposes of a withdrawal can be: to bring troops out from under the strikes of superior enemy forces and have them occupy a more favorable position for subsequent aggressive actions; to gain time in order to concentrate on a given axis; to shorten the front line and free forces for actions on more important axes; and to move troops out of an area of strong radioactive contamination when remaining in it becomes impossible.

Most often, a withdrawal is used during a defensive engagement when it is impossible with the forces available to retain the area (line) being occupied, and further continuation of the engagement will inevitably lead to the destruction of the defending troops. Sometimes a withdrawal may also be employed during an offensive when the troop grouping on the offensive, as a result of its losses, is in no condition to repel the counterthrust (counteroffensive) of fresh enemy forces committed to the engagement and hold the captured areas. A withdrawal can also be used as a maneuver to free forces operating on secondary axes and shift them over to more important axes.

In all cases, a withdrawal must be conducted in an organized and covert manner.

400. As a rule, a withdrawal is conducted in a complex and rapidly changing situation under the attacks of superior enemy forces. The success of a withdrawal will depend on its preparation and comprehensive support. All preparatory measures must be carried out in compressed time periods; from the command and staffs is required special efficiency and precision in work; and from the troops, endurance and rapid, skilful actions.

In preparing a withdrawal, the applicable basic measures are: adopting a decision and assigning tasks to the troops; preparing the troop movement routes and the intermediate and final lines of withdrawal; preparing rocket troop siting areas, airfields, and control posts in the zone of withdrawal; preparing demolitions and obstacles; and evacuating the sick and wounded and materiel.

401. When organizing a withdrawal, we determine: the goals of the withdrawal; the final line of withdrawal, the procedure for carrying it out, and the grouping of troops; the tasks of the large units; the procedure for using weapons of mass destruction; the lines favorable for battle and the time periods they are to be held; the cooperation procedure while disengaging from the enemy and moving to the rear; the time periods for conducting the withdrawal and the tasks of the troops after its completion; the organization of the air defense; the procedure for withdrawing rear services large units (units), the measures for coverage of the main forces, for reconnaissance, for protection against weapons of mass destruction, for engineer, materiel, technical, and medical support, and also the organization of control.

402. The troop grouping for the withdrawal is established based on the conditions of the situation, taking into account the depth of the withdrawal and the availability of forces and means. Usually it is made up of rearguards, main forces, and the rear echelon.

The main task of the rearguards is to safeguard the disengagement of the main forces from the enemy and their orderly withdrawal. Units and subunits from first-echelon large units are designated to make up the rearguards. In certain cases, entire large units can be allocated to fulfil the tasks of the rearguards.

The main forces are formed up into one or two echelons for the withdrawal. A two-echelon disposition is employed in those cases when the withdrawal is carried out successively with a defense organized on intermediate lines. To conduct maneuvering combat actions, it is necessary to have, in the complement of the echelons of the main forces, strong mobile groupings made up predominantly of tank large units (units).

403. In a withdrawal, nuclear and chemical weapons are used primarily to destroy enemy nuclear attack means, to inflict damage on his troop groupings posing the greatest threat to withdrawing troops, to destroy large-scale enemy airborne landing forces, to disrupt control, and also to create zones of contamination.

In a withdrawal, artillery supports troop combat actions, destroys the enemy's nuclear attack means, engages in combat against his artillery and tank groupings, destroys the enemy's control posts and radiotechnical means, and also wages combat against his reserves and airborne landing forces.

404. Front aviation is called upon to reconnoiter the enemy by air, to destroy his nuclear means and aviation, to support covering troops and the main forces when they are conducting combat actions, and to combat the enemy's groupings on the offensive and his airborne landing forces.

405. When organizing air defense, principal attention is devoted to covering the main troop groupings when they are disengaging from battle, when they are negotiating water obstacles and defiles, and also when deploying and conducting combat actions on intermediate lines and the final line.

406. To combat enemy airborne landing forces landed (dropped) in the rear of our troops, we first of all call upon aviation and tank large units and units. In a number of cases, for the purposes of rapidly destroying large-scale enemy airborne landing forces we can deliver strikes with the use of nuclear and chemical weapons.

407. For the purposes of safeguarding the flanks of the large units and units executing the withdrawal, provisions are made to: conduct continuous reconnaisance; organize lateral security; prepare air, missile, and artillery strikes against probable enemy deployment areas (lines) on the flanks of our troops; set up obstacles and demolitions on enemy routes of action; and also to maneuver forces and means to threatened axes.

408. Engineer support includes: organizing and conducting engineer reconnaissance; laying and maintaining crossings over water obstacles; preparing intermediate lines and the final line; supporting counterattacks and counterthrusts; setting up obstacles and setting off demolitions; and carrying out camouflage measures.

Mining and demolition of installations and roads in the troop movement zone are carried out in accordance with the decision of the commander of the army or large unit executing the

withdrawal. The destruction of especially important installations of a military and economic nature is carried out with the authorization of the front (army) commander.

409. The disengagement from battle of the main forces and their breakaway from the enemy must be carried out speedily and covertly.

The breakaway of the main forces from the enemy is conducted in the hours of darkness, under conditions of limited visibility or the use of smoke. When this is done, the troops allocated for coverage must maintain the previously established routine of combat actions.

The breakaway of the main forces from the enemy can be preceded by strikes of rocket troops, aviation, and artillery employing nuclear and chemical weapons against the most threatening enemy grouping, and sometimes by troop counterattacks and counterthrusts with a simultaneous withdrawal of the main forces.

Depending on the situation, the withdrawal of the main forces can be carried out without deploying troops for battle on previously planned lines or it can be done with battles on these lines. The main forces are deployed for battle on favorable lines when the troops allocated for coverage are not in a condition to hold the lines to be occupied nor to repel enemy attacks, or else when it is necessary to gain time by conducting a defense on successively occupied lines, and when forced to do so by the situation that has developed on the flanks of the troops. Under these conditions, the combat actions of the main forces, aimed at retaining favorable lines, must be combined with the delivery of attacks against the flanks of the enemy grouping on the offensive.

Rear services units and facilities usually are moved back first of all.

410. Enemy groupings that have reached the flanks of the withdrawing forces or their movement routes are destroyed with nuclear weapons and decisive attacks of large units and units with the support of aviation and artillery fire.

The troops executing the withdrawal are moved out to the final line or to a designated area in a grouping which conforms to the nature of the forthcoming actions. This is achieved through timely refinement of tasks for the large units and units, through their organized movement, and through a change, when necessary, of the place of their movement while withdrawing.

411. Troop control while withdrawing is effected by brief combat instructions and signals and by dispatching staff officers.

Communications with the covering troops are provided primarily by radio and by messenger means.

The front (army) staff, in conformity with the commander's instructions, monitors the withdrawal of the troops according to time and phase lines, devoting special attention to safeguarding the flanks and junctions of the withdrawing forces and to coordinating their actions during combat on the favorable lines, and it also organizes the timely receipt of data on the position and actions of enemy and one's own troops.

412. Combat ships, transport vessels, and military transport aviation are used to evacuate troops, civilians, and valuable materiel from isolated sectors of the seacoast and from islands. To cover the embarkation and loading, strong rearguards from the toughest units and subunits, plus naval forces and air defense forces and means are allocated.

The sea transit is effected either in heavily guarded convoys or by single ships, predominantly at night. Military transport aviation makes flights with single aircraft or in small groups and also primarily at night.

The rearguards withdraw to the embarkation points after the departure of the main forces. The evacuation of the rearguards can be carried out on combat and transport aircraft and on combat ships, including submarines.

The front (army) commander usually is charged with directing the evacuation from isolated sectors of the seacoast and from islands. Sometimes a fleet commander may be charged with directing the evacuation.

CHAPTER 7

TROOP REGROUPINGS

413. Troop regroupings are carried out by moving troops from the interior to the front, from the front to the rear area, and along the front to new axes. Regroupings in the zone of a front (army) are carried out by decision of the front (army) commander, but into the zone of other fronts and when moving troops forward from the interior of the country, they are organized on the basis of instructions of the Supreme High Command.

414. During regroupings, troops may be subjected to nuclear strikes and the action of enemy chemical weapons; they will be forced to negotiate areas of destruction and extensive zones of radioactive and chemical contamination; and drastic changes in the situation, necessitating the immediate entry of troops into the engagement, are possible. These conditions require careful organization and comprehensive support of the regroupings, continuous and firm control of troops, adoption of measures that ensure maintenance of the continuous combat effectiveness of troops, and execution of the regroupings at high speeds.

415. Troops carry out regroupings: by organic means, by rail, water, and air transport, and also by the combined method. The combined movement of troops is carried out with the simultaneous (integrated) use of various types of transport. One or another method of movement is used, depending on the purposes of the regrouping, the distance, the time allocated for the regrouping, the condition of the lines of transportation, the availability of transport means, and also the nature of the situation on the lines of transportation and at the front.

416. To support troop regroupings it is especially important to cover them against air strikes, to protect them against weapons of mass destruction, to provide engineer, materiel, technical and road support, and to organize provost and traffic control service. For the successful conduct of troop regroupings it is very important also to reconnoiter the routes and constantly know the radiation situation. For the purposes of ensuring the concealment of troop regroupings, it is necessary to

combat enemy reconnaissance, to carry out all troop movements in the vicinity of the front primarily at night, and to strictly observe radio discipline.

Troop regroupings must be carried out purposefully, rapidly, covertly, and should come as a surprise to the enemy.

417. A decision to regroup is arrived at taking into account impending troop actions after the regrouping as well as possible opposition on the part of the enemy during the regrouping.

In making the decision to regroup, the formation commander (commander) determines: the purpose of the regrouping, the troop grouping in the new areas, the arrival time of the troops in these areas and their possible tasks; the sequence and times of regrouping of the large units; the movement zones (routes), and -- if transportation is provided -- the stations, ports (piers), loading (unloading) airfields, and allocated transport means; the organization of the air defense; the measures to protect troops against means of mass destruction and the measures for camouflage; and the organization of road support and of troop control.

Based on the decision made and the instructions of the higher staff, the front or army (corps) staff, with the involvement of the chiefs of the branch arms, works out the regrouping plan and issues combat instructions. The regrouping plan is worked out graphically on a map (diagram) with the necessary calculations annexed.

418. When regrouping using organic means, the troops carry out the march on authorized and attached transport means. For ground forces, a march is the basic method of carrying out a regrouping, especially in a front (army) zone.

A march with organic means permits carrying out a rapid shift or movement of the troops over considerable distances. Accomplishing a march of this type ensures the constant combat readiness of units, large units, and formations, and ensures their rapid deployment and engagement in battle from the march. It affords the opportunity of changing when necessary from certain routes (zones of movement) to other ones and of bypassing

areas and zones of destruction and contamination. When organizing a march over a considerable distance it is necessary to adopt measures to conserve the technical equipment of combat and transport vehicles and to economize on the expenditure of motor vehicle mileage and of fuel and lubricants.

419. In all cases, marches must be executed at the maximum possible speed of movement. When composite and tank columns execute a march on roads, they can attain average speeds of movement of from 20 to 30 kilometers an hour in the daytime and from 15 to 20 kilometers an hour at night. Motor vehicle columns can move on roads in the daytime at a speed of 30 to 40 kilometers an hour and at night at a speed of 25 to 30 kilometers an hour. The length of a day's march may reach 200 to 250 kilometers or more.

In mountains, deserts, and forested swampy areas the average speed of movement of columns, depending on the nature of the terrain and the condition of the roads, may be reduced in the daytime to 15 to 20 kilometers an hour and at night to 10 or 15 kilometers an hour. The length of a day's march may amount to from 120 to 170 kilometers.

When executing marches over long distances it is necessary to endeavor to transport heavy equipment (tanks, launcher units, heavy artillery) by railroad or on trailers.

The areas of short and extended halts for personnel to rest and for inspecting equipment are selected in such a way as to ensure dispersed accommodation of troops in them, camouflage and protection against enemy weapons of mass destruction, and also rapid movement of troops out of these areas to continue the march.

420. In organizing the march, the front or army (corps) commander determines: the tasks of the formations (large units) for the march; the departure areas (lines), zones (routes) of movement, movement phase control lines, rest areas, and final concentration areas; the times to begin and finish the march; the disposition of formations (large units) on the march; the procedure for the deployment and actions of troops in case the enemy is encountered; the methods of crossing areas of destruction and zones of contamination; the measures for

reconnaissance, air defense, protection against weapons of mass destruction, and for engineer and materiel-technical support; and the organization of provost and traffic control service and of control.

The formation (large unit) staff, on the basis of the formation commander's (commander's) decision, works out the march order and map (diagram) of the march, and organizes march support, troop control, and monitoring of the movement of the troops.

421. For the execution of the march, troops are assigned the following: to motorized rifle (armored) and tank divisions -- zones of movement or routes (two to three routes for a division); to missile large units and other large units -- routes (one to two routes); and to armies and corps -- zones of movement so as to be able to select in a zone no less than two main routes and one alternate route for each first-echelon division.

The routes for the movement of large units must, if possible, not go through major inhabited localities, road junctions, or defiles. The distance between adjacent routes is determined so as to prevent columns moving in parallel being hit by the burst of a single medium-yield nuclear warhead.

When planning the march for rocket troops and missile technical units, it is necessary to give them routes that ensure the passage of large-size equipment.

422. The march formation of a formation (large unit) on the march is drawn up according to the assigned task for the march, the conditions of the situation, the number of routes, and the impending tasks in the final area. The march formation must ensure that the march is completed in the planned period of time, that the combat effectiveness of the troops is maintained under conditions of possible nuclear strikes and of the effect of enemy chemical weapons used against the columns, and that the troops deploy rapidly into battle dispositions upon encountering the enemy.

The march formation of a formation (large unit) consists of the march columns of the first- and second-echelon large units (units), the reserves, and of the rear services units and

facilities.

In anticipation of an encounter with the enemy on the march, it is advisable to have tank large units (units) at the head or on the flanks of the disposition of a formation (large unit); the antitank reserves and mobile obstacle detachments must move behind the first-echelon large units (units) on the most threatened and tank-favorable axes, and troop rear services units and facilities move behind their own large units.

423. On the march, reconnaissance must warn troops in good time about the appearance of the enemy, the strength of his grouping, and the nature of his actions; it must determine the capacity of the roads and bridges on the troop movement routes, the possibility of using cross-country tracks and negotiating water obstacles, the condition of the troop rest areas and concentration areas, and the political and economic situation in the concentration areas.

Radiation and chemical reconnaissance on the march is organized for the purpose of timely detection of contaminated sectors on the movement routes and in the troop rest and concentration areas.

424. Air defense on the march when troops are moving up from the interior of the country to the theaters of military operations is implemented by the Air Defense Forces of the Country as well as by troop air defense forces and means and fighter aviation of the air army. The Air Defense Forces of the Country must cover crossings, road junctions, major inhabited localities, and areas of halts on the troop movement axes. Troop air defense forces and means executing the march must be in constant readiness to repel enemy air strikes.

Air defense in the front zone is accomplished by front (army) air defense forces and means, and in some cases, by the Air Defense Forces of the Country. It is advisable to place surface-to-air missile units at firing positions in the areas of crossings, road junctions, defiles, and major inhabited localities for the time the columns are going through, as well as in troop concentration areas or at the lines of deployment. Fighter aviation is used to cover columns on the routes by the method of airfield alert, and when necessary also through

airborne alert.

425. Engineer support of a march includes: engineer reconnaissance of the routes and terrain in the zone of movement; preparing and maintaining movement routes and water obstacle crossings; preparing rest areas and concentration areas for the troops; and carrying out camouflage measures.

426. When organizing rear services support of the march, provisions are made for: bringing up to norm the mobile reserves of materiel; ridding the troops of unnecessary equipment; evacuating the wounded and sick; organizing rations supply, medical assistance, and fuel supply on the march; establishing reserves of rations and fuel and lubricants on the routes, especially in the rest and concentration areas; technical servicing, inspection, and repair of combat and transport vehicles; and determining the sequence of march of rear services units and facilities.

427. Provost and traffic control service on the march is organized and implemented on all troop movement routes, in concentration areas, and on the lines of deployment. To do this, together with the forces and means of the provost and traffic control service of the front and armies, we also allocate the provost and traffic control subunits and units of the large units executing the march. In certain cases, to fulfil the most crucial tasks of the provost and traffic control service, we can assign officers of the staff of the army (corps) or of the advancing forces with the necessary means of movement and communications.

The main tasks of the provost and traffic control service on the march are: to maintain order and regulate troop movement on the routes; to monitor the progress of the troop movement and the observance of camouflage measures; to combat enemy sabotage and reconnaissance groups and agents on the routes and in the concentration areas; to secure the routes; and to collect straggling personnel, combat equipment, and transport vehicles and send them to their own large units.

428. To control troops on the march we use radio, radio-relay, wire, and messenger means of communication, and aircraft and helicopters. Troop control on the march through

radio must be accomplished with short signals using automatic secure communications equipment and signal coding devices.

To deceive the enemy it is necessary to use radio camouflage measures extensively.

The operating procedure for radio means in the transmit mode is defined in each specific case by the front or army (corps) commander (staff) depending on the conditions of the situation, the instructions of the higher staff, and the requirements to provide control.

429. During a march, zones of destruction and of radioactive contamination of the terrain, depending on the situation, are bypassed or negotiated by troops on combat and transport vehicles, with measures being taken to protect personnel and combat equipment. The zones of radioactive contamination of the terrain are negotiated by the troops on those axes where the lowest levels of radiation have been ascertained and which permit the troops to move rapidly.

When there are present in the area (on the routes) zones with high levels of radiation which are impossible to bypass and personnel would receive an irradiation dose exceeding the permissible norms while negotiating them, by order of the front or army commander (corps commander) the advancing troops can be halted for the time required for the high radiation levels to drop to safe amounts.

430. If troops are subjected to enemy nuclear strikes during the march, then measures are immediately undertaken to clear the roads, to locate bypass routes, and to restore troop control for the purpose of moving them rapidly out of the areas of destruction and high radioactive contamination.

Eliminating the aftereffects of enemy nuclear strikes must be carried out in a short period of time by the troops subjected to the nuclear attack or by forces and means specially allocated to do this, with complete decontamination of personnel and equipment being carried out after the troops have arrived in the rest or concentration areas.

Clearing and restoring of damaged road sectors and crossings are carried out by engineer units with the participation of the forces and means of the troops executing the march. When it is not possible to restore destroyed roads and crossings in a short period of time, we locate and prepare bypasses and crossings in other sectors of the water obstacle.

431. Rail movements are an important method of moving troops from the interior of the county to the theaters of military operations and of carrying out the regrouping of troops from one theater of military operations to another. They will also be used to carry out regroupings within a front and between fronts. Troop large units can be moved by rail in full complement -- all personnel and materiel, or in partial complement -- only those troop units armed with heavy military equipment (tanks, self-propelled artillery pieces, missile systems, artillery, and engineer vehicles).

Large units can be moved by rail in full complement primarily in those cases when they are transferred to a front or army from the reserve of the Supreme High Command (from an adjacent front) and are shifted a distance not under 700 kilometers.

With a poorly developed network of unsurfaced and surfaced roads, and also in the season of bad roads and in winter when there are snowdrifts, troop movements by rail can be carried out over distances under 700 kilometers.

The rate of speed and the scale of troop movements by rail will depend on the conditions of the situation, the number of rail lines, and their condition and traffic capacity.

432. Rail movements from the rear area of the country, as well as inter-front movements, are organized by instructions of the Supreme High Command. Movements within the zone of a front (army) are organized by the front (army) commander.

When organizing rail movements, we determine: the formations, large units (units), and materiel to be moved; the movement procedure and sequence; the main and alternate troop loading, unloading, and concentration areas; the times to begin and finish the movements; the measures for technical coverage of

the railroads and comprehensive support of the movements; and the troop control procedure.

433. In planning troop movements, a front (army) staff is obligated: to determine the number of railroad trains necessary to move the large units (units); to coordinate troop movements within the front with operational and supply shipments from without; to work out a movement plan; to organize the air defense and protection of the troops against means of mass destruction; to determine the measures to restore the railroads in case they are destroyed by the enemy; to establish the procedure and times for the arrival of the troops in the loading areas and the loading procedure and time; to organize the security and defense of these areas as well as the provost and traffic control service in the troop loading, unloading, and concentration areas; to make provisions for camouflage measures; and to organize control, communications, and monitoring of the movement and concentration of the troops in the new areas.

434. When preparing and organizing troop movements, special attention should be devoted to preserving the secrecy of the purposes and directions of the forthcoming movements. To do this, it is necessary to limit the number of persons participating in the organization of them; to inform the large unit (unit) commanders after they have arrived in the unloading areas of their new concentration areas; and when possible, to organize fake troop movements.

The loading and unloading areas must be designated so as to ensure the dispersed and camouflaged positioning of the troops and the rapid handling of the loading and unloading of all types of combat equipment and weapons.

To prepare and fit out the loading and unloading stations we call upon railroad troops and also forces and means of the Ministry of Railways and of the troops being transported. In addition to the main troop loading and unloading stations, we must also designate and prepare alternate stations.

In the troop loading, transshipment and unloading areas, security and defense are organized by order of and with the forces of the commanders of the large units (units) being moved.

435. For the purposes of maintaining the combat effectiveness of the troops during movements and concentration in new areas, it is necessary: to load each train with troop units or subunits insofar as possible in full complement with their weapons and to provide them with materiel; to ship materiel with personnel, servicing vehicles, and control organs; and to organize the successive dispatch and the arrival of the trains.

With troop movements by rail, the reserves of materiel in the large units, units, and subunits must be brought up to norms taking into account the requirements for materiel while en route.

436. The air defense of movements by rail in the interior of the country and in the zone adjacent to the front is accomplished by the Air Defense (Antimissile Defense) Forces of the Country; and in the zone of a front, by front air defense forces and means. The main objectives of coverage are the loading, transshipment, and unloading areas, the railway junctions, bridges, and tunnels, and also the trains en route to the most important sectors. Close air defense of the troop trains en route is accomplished by air defense forces and means of the troops being moved and of the mobile troop train air defense subunits allocated by Military Transportation Service organs.

437. Protecting troops against enemy weapons of mass destruction during movements by rail is achieved by: dispersing the loading and unloading of troops at different stations; carrying out the movements in short periods of time; observing camouflage measures and maintaining strict order when carrying out loading, transshipment, and unloading operations; having troops exploit the protective features of the terrain while located in the loading areas; having troops move out immediately from the unloading stations to the assigned areas; and by carrying out with timeliness measures to eliminate the aftereffects of enemy use of nuclear weapons and other means of mass destruction.

438. During the movements, Military Transportation Service organs ensure the precise observance of the planned traffic timetable of the troop trains and rolling stock. Together with organs of the Ministry of Railways, they adopt measures to preclude long interruptions of the movement of troop trains and

rolling stock in case of destruction on the railroads. To restore destroyed sectors of the railroads on the line of travel of the troop trains, forces and means of the troops being moved may be called upon.

When there are considerable interruptions of traffic on railroads due to large-scale destruction produced by enemy nuclear strikes, it is necessary to: change (refine) the plan of troop movement by rail, and primarily to change the lines of movement of the troop trains onto bypass lines; immediately inform the large unit (unit) commanders, the military transportation organs and the railroad administration -- in the part that concerns it -- of changes in the order of loading, travel, and unloading of the troop trains; reduce other types of shipments on the newly allocated lines of movement and in troop train unloading areas; organize the unloading of troops from the troop trains on approaching the sectors of destruction and send them by march to the concentration areas or to the areas of the newly designated stations in order to load up and continue travel by rail; postpone the times for the loading of the next large units (units); designate and organize the preparation of new unloading and concentration areas for the large units (units); and refine the organization of communications and of troop control.

The assembly of large units (units) when the troops are forced to unload is carried out in areas and in periods established by the front commander (army or corps commander).

439. To meet the large unit commanders or their representatives arriving in the unloading area with the lead troop trains, we can dispatch front (army) staff officers who will, in conformity with the formation commander's decision, brief them on the situation that has developed and define more precisely the concentration areas and the procedure for the move to these areas of the troops that are unloading.

440. Air movements can be used to accomplish the following tasks: urgent movements of troops and shipments of missiles, nuclear warheads, fuel, and other means from the interior of the country to the theaters of military operations, from one theater to another and also between fronts and within the zone of a front. Depending on the conditions of the situation, entire

subunits, units and large units can be airlifted.

To carry out air movements, we bring in military transport aviation of the Air Forces, transport aircraft and helicopters of the fronts, and transport aviation of the Civil Air Fleet.

Air movements from the interior of the country and inter-front movements are organized according to instructions of the Supreme High Command. Air movements within the zone of a front are organized by the front commander, at whose disposal large units from the complement of military transport aviation may be placed.

441. When making a decision on air movements, a front (army) commander determines: the large units (units, subunits) which are to be moved; the loading and unloading airfields (sites), the troop waiting, assembly, and concentration areas after unloading, and the tasks of the troops; the military transport aviation large units (units) allocated for the movement; the readiness of the troops to load up; the procedure and times for loading and unloading; the measures for air defense; the tasks of combat aviation to safeguard the troop movement; and the organization of control.

The front (army) staff, based on the commander's decision and together with the staffs (representatives) of the air army and of the large units (units) of military transport aviation, works out the air movement plan and necessary instructions for the movement, and organizes air defense and other types of support.

442. Based on the front commander's instructions, the air army commander makes the decision for support of the air movement of the troops; in this he makes provisions for: the procedure and methods of moving the troops and the allocation of military transport aviation; the allocation of airfields (sites) among military transport aviation large units (units, subunits) and the procedure to prepare them; the composition of the flight waves and their flight routes; the measures for air defense, protection against means of mass destruction, and camouflage of the takeoff and landing airfields (sites), as well as the signals for notifying one's own surface-to-air means and fighter aviation situated on the movement routes; and the procedure for security

and defense of the takeoff and landing airfields (sites), for fighter aviation coverage of the flight waves, and the organization of communications with the flight waves in the air as well as between the airfields (sites) in the loading and unloading areas.

To load troops onto the aircraft (helicopters) and also for their unloading, airfields (sites) are assigned to each unit (subunit).

To load onto the aircraft (helicopters), troops are positioned in waiting areas; and after unloading, they proceed to an assembly area or take action in conformity with the assigned task. The distance separating the waiting and assembly areas from the loading (unloading) airfields (sites) depends on the specific conditions of the situation.

The organization of the airlift, the sequence of loading, and the grouping of troops in the assembly and concentration areas must conform to the purpose of their forthcoming employment.

443. When organizing air movements, special attention must be devoted to the protection of forces and means against enemy nuclear strikes and also to the camouflage of the troops being moved and of the military transport aviation.

To do this, it is necessary: to constantly combat all types of enemy reconnaissance, to covertly carry out the concentration in the loading areas of military transport aviation and troops to be moved without permitting them to remain an extended period of time in these areas, and to observe camouflage measures; to strictly adhere to the established operating routine of communications means during the loading and unloading; to carry out the loading and unloading of troops rapidly; to disperse the troops being moved and the transport means; to use primarily the hours of darkness for airlifting troops; to continuously conduct radiation reconnaissance in the loading and unloading areas; to make timely provisions for measures for eliminating the aftereffects of enemy nuclear strikes and also for protecting troop personnel and aircraft (helicopter) crews when the troop airlift is carried out in a complex air radiation situation.

When organizing air defense we should coordinate with particular precision the actions of fighter aviation and surface-to-air missile troops for coverage against enemy air strikes of the waves of troops being moved on the flight routes and during their unloading.

444. Waterborne troop movements are used: to deliver troops and materiel to isolated coastal sectors and islands; to maneuver within a front when the front is operating on coastal axes or when there are navigable rivers in the front zone; and to evacuate troops and materiel from isolated coastal sectors and islands.

When organizing waterborne troop movements, it is necessary to take into account: the requirements and availability of vessels (transports) and the possibility of concentrating them in the embarkation areas (points); the necessity of covering the troops being transported against strikes of enemy aviation, missiles, and naval forces, and the requirements for means to sweep mines out of the channels.

445. The organization of waterborne troop movements is based on the coordinated decisions of the front (army) commander and the fleet (flotilla) commander. In making the decision for a movement of troops by water, the front (army) commander determines: what large units must be moved, in what strength and what order, to what areas and in what time periods; the organization of the air defense of the transport vessel concentration points, of the loading and unloading areas, and of the convoys in transit; the engineer forces and means allocated to prepare the troop loading and unloading sites; the procedure for the materiel, technical, and medical support of the troops being moved; and the organization of control.

The fleet (flotilla) commander, on the basis of the front (army) commander's decision, determines: the type and number of transport vessels needed to carry out the waterborne troop movement; the points and times for the concentration of the transport means; the loading (unloading) and convoy forming-up points; the composition of the convoy and its transit time and procedure; the composition of the covering and escort forces of the convoy; the tasks of the fleet (flotilla) forces and of the supporting front aviation large units (units) allocated to

support the troop movement; the organization of cooperation between fleet (flotilla) forces and with supporting front (army) means; the protective measures against means of mass destruction; the organization of air defense and of measures for comprehensive support and control.

446. The front (army) staff, together with the fleet (flotilla) staff and representatives of the staffs of the large units (units) being moved, works out the waterborne movement plan, in which are indicated: the composition of the forces being moved and the calculations for the use of the transport vessels and of the loading and unloading points; the convoy shelter points during transit; the sequence of the loading and unloading of transport means; the procedure for using available loading and unloading machinery; the procedure for the forming up and transit of the convoy; the times of movements; the organization of air defense and of all types of support; and the organization of control and communications.

447. For the purposes of maintaining the combat effectiveness of the large units (units) being moved, their loading on individual transports and vessels must be carried out in full complement with the necessary means of reinforcement and reserves of materiel. As a rule, the troops must be loaded in the hours of darkness, with the observance of camouflage measures. As troops and equipment are loaded, it is advisable to move the transports (vessels) out to previously planned places and disperse them there in such a manner as to deny the enemy the opportunity of hitting several transports (vessels) simultaneously with a nuclear weapon and at the same time ensure that a convoy can be formed up in a minimum period of time.

448. Concealment of a waterborne troop movement is attained by: strictly observing camouflage measures, organizing and waging combat against enemy reconnaissance, establishing a strict operating routine for the radio means, and by choosing loading and unloading areas which have natural camouflage.

The most advantageous time for transit of a convoy is during the hours of darkness. Before the onset of daylight, the convoy must be dispersed and carefully camouflaged at various points in the coastal zone. When the situation does not permit us to conceal and disperse the convoy's ships in the coastal zone, it

is expedient to increase to the maximum the distance between transports and ships in cruising formations and to take steps to strengthen their defense.

449. The cruising formation of a convoy in transit must exclude the possibility of a considerable number of transports being hit by a single nuclear strike, it must ensure the maximum utilization of all forces and means for defense in transit and freedom of maneuver for the transport means and escort ships.

The air defense of a convoy in transit is implemented by the fighter aviation forces of the front and of the Air Defense (Antimissile Defense) Forces of the Country within their range and by the surface-to-air means of the escort ships, transports, and troops being transported.

The protection against means of mass destruction for the troops being moved is ensured by organizing and conducting continuous radiation and chemical reconnaissance in the loading and unloading points and during transit, by dispersing transport means, and by preparing in advance measures to eliminate the aftereffects of enemy strikes using means of mass destruction.

The antisubmarine defense of a convoy is conducted for the purpose of timely detection and destruction of enemy submarines and is carried out by specially allocated antisubmarine aviation and ships.

The antimine defense of a convoy is achieved by: selection of transit routes taking into account the danger of mines, visual and radar surveillance over the water in the loading points and on the convoy's route of travel for the purpose of detecting mines and minefields, systematic control minesweeping of the channels, piloting of the convoy immediately behind the minesweepers in areas where there is the danger of mines, and also by destruction of mines on the convoy's route of travel.

450. When organizing materiel, technical, and medical support for troops being moved by water, provisions are made to: provide the troops with all types of mobile and travel reserves, establish reserves of fresh water and fuel for the entire period of transit, deploy (establish) depots with various types of materiel at previously planned points in the coastal zone, and to

evacuate all wounded and sick to front (fleet) or other medical facilities.

451. Combined troop movements are carried out when the use of different types of transport enables the regrouping of troops to be carried out in the shortest period of time.

Combined troop movements can be carried out either by simultaneously employing different types of transport or by successively transshipping the troops being moved from one type of transport to another.

452. In organizing a troop movement by the combined method, the front (army) commander determines: what large units (units) it is necessary to move with what type of transport; the troop loading, transshipment, and unloading areas for each type of movement; the zones, routes (courses), and waterways for the troop movement; the rates and times of the troop movement; the large unit (unit) concentration areas after the movement; the air defense organization; the measures to maintain the combat readiness of the troops being moved and to protect them against means of mass destruction; the materiel, technical and medical support; and the organization of control.

In conformity with the front (army) commander's decision, the staff works out the map (diagram) of the combined troop movement, the schedules (tables) according to separate types of movements, and the instructions on their support.

453. The organization of control when regroupings are being carried out must ensure constant control of troops, monitoring of the progress of the movement of troops, and when necessary, the rapid change of axes and methods of moving as well as of the concentration areas of forces and means.

When organizing control it is necessary to: establish the procedure for relocating the staff of the formation (large unit) during the period of the movement; organize communications; detail representatives of the front (army, large unit) staff to the loading, transshipment, and unloading stations (airfields, ports, sites); provide for measures to ensure the uninterrupted execution of the march and movement of troops in case of enemy nuclear strikes on the troop movement routes; organize report

gathering posts in the troop movement zone and to prepare communications with them beforehand; and organize monitoring of the progress of the troop movement.

The front or army (corps) staff is obligated to organize in advance communications with the troops during their location in the departure, loading (unloading), and concentration areas and during the time of their movement, and also with Military Transportation Service organs.

CHAPTER 8

PRINCIPLES OF THE REAR SERVICES SUPPORT OF TROOPS

454. The operational rear services of the Ground Forces consist of front and army rear services.

The front rear services, the main level in the system of the operational rear services of the Ground Forces, are made up of: front bases with reserves of materiel, missile technical units, hospital bases, and motor transport, road, pipeline, repair, and other rear services large units, units and facilities. The number and composition of the rear services large units, units, and facilities in a front are not fixed and they depend on the front's mission and assigned tasks, the theater of military operations, and other conditions of the situation.

The main tasks of a front rear services are: to provide troops with all types of materiel and transport it with timeliness to the armies (separate large units), to prepare and ensure the stable operation of the transportation lines, to restore damaged combat equipment and other equipment, to render aid and medical treatment to the wounded and sick, to carry out various types of evacuation, and also to organize the utilization of local means.

The army rear services consist of a mobile army base and missile technical, motor transport, road, medical, and evacuation units. The main tasks of army rear services are to deliver materiel with timeliness to the army large units and units and to provide technical and medical support to the troops. The army rear services, being mobile, are capable of rapidly relocating behind the troops and of supporting their combat actions in any situation.

455. The basis of the organization of rear services support of troops is the front (army) commander's decision for the operation.

In his instructions on rear services, the front (army) commander defines: the tasks of the rear services during the

preparation and course of the operation; the main axes for the deployment of the front (army) bases; the times for establishing reserves of materiel, the amounts of them to be established, and the norms for their expenditure; the composition of the military transport aviation to deliver materiel to the troops; the main measures to protect, defend, and secure the rear; the readiness times of the rear services; and the location of the front (army) rear control post.

The front (army) commander exercises control over the rear services support of troops personally, through the front (army) staff, through his deputy for the rear, and also through the chiefs of branch arms.

456. The front (army) staff, in organizing the comprehensive support of an operation, provides the rear staff with all possible assistance in organizing the uninterrupted work of the rear services.

The staff must constantly know the materiel supply status of the troops and the status of the main types of equipment, provide rear services organs with initial data in order for them to determine the materiel requirements and plan the work of the rear services, organize uninterrupted communications or the control of the rear services, and allocate, in accordance with the formation commander's instructions, the necessary forces and means to protect, defend, and secure the rear services and ensure their operation.

The front (army) chief of staff conveys with timeliness the formation commander's orders and instructions on rear services matters to the deputy commander for the rear and to the chiefs of the branch arms, special troops, and services; he informs them of the composition of the troops, the forthcoming operation, and changes in the situation, and he also ensures that the deputy commander for the rear and the chiefs of branch arms, special troops, and services work in a coordinated manner on the problems of rear services support of troops during the preparation and course of the operation.

457. The rear services support of troops is organized and implemented by the deputy commander for the rear and the chiefs of branch arms, special troops, and services -- the missile and

artillery armament service, fuel supply service, military transportation service, tank armament service, motor vehicle-tractor service, medical service, and others.

458. The front (army) deputy commander for the rear organizes the positioning and relocation of the rear services large units, units, and facilities, and the protection, defense, and security of the front (army) rear services; he bears responsibility for the preparation of the transportation routes and the organization and timely delivery of materiel by all types of transport.

The front (army) chief of the missile and artillery armament service is responsible for the delivery of missiles and nuclear warheads by special motor transport.

The orders of the deputy commander for the rear on matters concerning the organization of the rear, the delivery of materiel by all types of transport, and the supplying of the troops by subordinate services are binding upon all the chiefs of branch arms, special troops, and services of the front (army) as well as upon the army (large unit) commanders.

The deputy commander for the rear is obligated to report to the front (army) chief of staff the data on the supply status of the troops, on the condition of the transportation routes, and on changes in the situation concerning the rear services; and he must coordinate with him the most important instructions on the rear services. In accordance with the formation commander's orders, he works out the rear services directive (order), the rear services support plan for the front (army), and he issues the necessary instructions on the rear services.

459. The chiefs of branch arms, special troops, and services personally direct the materiel, technical, and other types of support according to their specialty and bear full responsibility for this. They direct subordinate rear services units and facilities, organize their close security, defense, and protection against means of mass destruction, implement systematic monitoring of the proper expenditure of materiel and of the technical status, repair, and evacuation of weapons and equipment, and issue the necessary instructions on the matters of support of front (army) troops in accordance with their

specialty.

The chiefs of branch arms, special troops, and services accomplish their work in close contact with the deputy commander for the rear and the rear staff of the front (army). They inform the deputy commander for the rear with timeliness on the supply status of the troops and submit to him requisitions for the shipment of materiel and for evacuation by all types of transport and they participate in the working out of the directive (order) on the rear services and on measures to organize the rear.

460. The front rear services carry out their work in the rear zone of the front. In offensive operations, positioning areas and axes of relocation are assigned to army rear services units and facilities within the zones of actions of the armies. In defensive operations, rear zones are assigned to the armies.

The rear zone is designated for the purposes of fixing responsibility for the maintenance of order in the troop rear area and for the conduct of measures to protect the rear area against weapons of mass destruction and the conduct of defense and security measures; for the positioning and operation of rear services large units, units, and facilities; for maintaining reserves of all types; and for utilizing transportation routes and local means.

Rear areas are not assigned to second-echelon armies or front reserves nor to the air army; their rear services units and facilities are positioned within the front's rear zone in accordance with the orders of the front commander.

The front's rear zone is limited: on the right and the left by the demarcation lines, on the rear by the rear area boundary of the front, and toward the front line it goes up to the areas where the mobile army bases are positioned (in the defense it goes up to the rear area boundary of the armies).

The demarcation lines of the rear zone of the front are established by the General Staff; those of the rear zone of the army, by the front commander. Their depth may reach up to 400 kilometers in a front during the preparation of an offensive operation, and from 600 to 800 kilometers during the operation; from 400 to 600 kilometers in the defensive operation of a front,

and up to 100 kilometers for that of an army.

461. During the preparation and course of an operation, rear services large units, units, and facilities and materiel reserves are positioned on the main axes of actions of the troops, echeloned through the depth of the rear zone with due regard for the road network, the terrain, and the uninterrupted support of troops. During preparation of an offensive operation, in order to create the best conditions for the support of the troops conducting an offensive at high rates of advance, some of the forces and means of the front (army) rear services are moved up closer to the disposition areas of the rear services of the armies (divisions).

The areas in which rear services large units, units, and materiel depots are located must possess advantageous natural conditions for shelter, camouflage, and dispersed positioning.

462. Forward front bases are set up on restored sectors of the railroads, and, in case of necessity, also away from them.

Rear front bases are set up on the main rail lines in the depth of the front's rear zone.

For the purposes of bringing materiel reserves nearer to the troops, the forward and rear front bases detail their own branches, which can be positioned away from railroads and waterways.

As a rule, rear front bases relocate on the restored rail lines and are positioned forward of the previously deployed forward front bases.

Front missile technical units are positioned taking into account the grouping of the missile units and large units as well as the terrain and the availability and condition of the roads. During an operation, they are relocated steadily, piecemeal so as to ensure the continuous preparation of the missiles and their timely delivery to the troops.

463. As a rule, mobile army bases move forward during the offensive behind the main forces, allocating a portion of the transport carrying reserves for support of the troops operating

on the other axes.

The delivery of materiel to large units is effected by sending army motor transport to transfer reserves to divisional transport, and in certain cases, to regimental transport.

In a defense, mobile army bases are positioned in a dispersed manner in the depth of the army rear zone on the main axes of action of the troops.

Army missile technical units are positioned and relocated in accordance with the deployment and relocation of the missile large units (units).

464. To transport materiel and for evacuation, we use the network of rail, motor, water, and air routes, and in addition, to deliver fuel, we use pipelines.

In a front zone we usually restore no less than two axial rail lines and two lateral roads through regulating stations and their branches.

On the main axial rail lines (waterways) we organize one or two regulating stations (ports), branches of them, and also alternate regulating stations (ports). The General Staff designates the regulating stations and they are intended to receive all supply trains (transports) coming to the front, to process them, and to subsequently send them on to their destination.

To receive and unload the transports that arrive, unloading stations (ports, piers) are prepared and assigned to front bases, front missile technical units, army bases of the air army, aviation technical units, and when necessary, to combined-arms (tank) armies and to other large units.

Railroad large units and units are deployed on the axial and lateral rail lines to be restored and they allocate a portion of their forces and means to provide technical coverage to the most important and vulnerable installations.

465. The possible frequent destruction of railroads in present-day operations, the difficulty of restoring them rapidly,

the conduct of combat actions by the troops by axes, their deeper operational disposition and the dispersed positioning of rear services large units, units, and facilities are drastically increasing the role of motor transport in the delivery of materiel and in evacuation, requiring a developed network of motor roads and an increase in their capacity as well as the organization of reliable road support.

For delivery and evacuation and for the movement of troops and equipment, in a front (army) we prepare and maintain main and auxiliary motor roads as well as lateral roads through the location of front bases, mobile army bases, and along major water obstacles.

Using road troop forces, on the main roads we prepare parallel crossings, detours around sectors that are difficult to traverse and around inhabited localities, and we organize technical coverage and movement control.

On auxiliary and lateral roads we carry out the minimum necessary road and bridge work, set up traffic control and security posts in the most important locations; and on the remaining sectors we only monitor the condition of the roads and bridges.

Motor roads must primarily link front bases with the mobile army bases, unloading stations (ports, airfields) with the disposition areas of missile technical units, and the latter with the siting areas of missile large units and units.

466. Road support is handled by front (army) road large units (units).

Each front road traffic control brigade is assigned a zone in which it prepares one or two main and one or two auxiliary motor roads running axially from the front bases and missile technical units up to the mobile army bases and siting areas of the missile large units and units.

Each army road traffic control battalion prepares in the area assigned to it one main and one or two auxiliary roads going from the army mobile base up to the division depots.

On the front's main motor roads, in order to service subunits and parties of servicemen travelling separately, we set up ration, refueling, medical, and technical points, and -- when necessary -- rest and warming-up points; we also prepare shelters for personnel against nuclear weapons and other means of mass destruction.

Road traffic control service is organized on the main and auxiliary roads for the purposes of ensuring that movement is timely, organized, and covert, maintaining the established order, and monitoring the observance of camouflage measures. The road traffic control service carries out the tasks of controlling traffic, of conducting continuous radiation and chemical reconnaissance, of collecting data on the radiation situation, and also of informing troops proceeding on contaminated roads. Road traffic control units (subunits) also accomplish tasks of dispatcher control of traffic, they carry out surveillance and disseminate information on the movement of transportation and the condition of roads, and they transmit instructions to the commanders of motor transport columns.

Technical coverage of motor roads is carried out for the purpose of rapidly eliminating destruction and contamination as well as the damage caused to structures and individual road sectors by natural calamities.

467. The shipment of missiles, nuclear warheads, and missile propellant usually is carried out on general-use motor roads but in certain cases, special roads may be allocated for this purpose.

Preparing roads in the disposition areas of missile technical units and in the siting areas is carried out upon the instructions and by the forces and means of the commanders of the missile technical units and of missile large units (units), with engineer troops called upon when required.

468. To supply troops without interruption in an operation, in a front (in armies) we establish reserves of missiles, nuclear warheads and missile propellant, fuel, ammunition, rations, combat equipment, and other materiel. The amounts of these reserves are established as follows: for a front -- by the Supreme High Command, for an army -- by the front commander, for

a large unit -- by the army commander.

In a front, by the beginning of an operation we must establish reserves of materiel which will meet troop requirements for the entire operation.

469. The shipment of materiel is carried out as follows: in a front -- by rail, motor, water, and air transport, and to deliver fuel, pipelines are also used; in armies -- by motor transport, and in certain cases by rail, water, and air transport; and in large units -- by motor transport.

When organizing shipments, provisions should be made to use all types of transport according to a unified plan, to extensively maneuver transport means and reserves in accordance with the requirements of the situation, to rapidly shift shipments from one axis to another, to restore disrupted shipments with timeliness by substituting one means of transport for another, and by mechanizing loading and unloading operations.

When necessary, materiel can be delivered to large units (units) by front (army) transport without transshipment. To deliver cargo to armies (divisions) from front (army) bases, we can call upon army (troop unit) transport.

Regardless of the affiliation of the transport employed, the higher commander is responsible for the shipment of materiel to subordinate formations (large units).

470. When organizing shipment, special attention must be devoted to the timely delivery to the troops of missiles, nuclear warheads, and missile propellant, to the strict observance of the regulations on their transportation, servicing, safety precautions, and security and secrecy requirements.

Missiles and nuclear warheads are delivered to front regulating stations (airfields) and farther on to unloading stations by special rail, motor, and air transport; and from unloading stations and airfields to the missile assembly areas, by means of the front missile technical units.

Operational-tactical missiles are shipped, as a rule, assembled to missile large units and units subordinate to fronts

or armies by special transport of the front missile technical units, but tactical missiles are delivered unassembled to armies.

The shipment of assembled missiles to motorized rifle (armored) and tank large units is carried out by the means of the army missile technical units. Missile large units and units subordinate to fronts or armies can ship missiles using their own means.

Missile propellant is transported to the regulating stations (front depots) and farther on to the unloading stations by rail (motor) transport; from the unloading stations to the front depots (depot branches), by front missile propellant delivery motor transport units; from front depots (depot branches) to front missile technical units, by the transport of these units.

When necessary, missiles, nuclear warheads, and missile propellant are delivered in specially equipped aircraft and helicopters.

471. To deliver materiel by air transport, we prepare materiel support airfields in the vicinity of the disposition areas of missile technical units and of rear front bases and forward front bases (their branches). When it is not possible to allocate special airfields, the delivery of materiel by air transport is accomplished from the air army's home airfields.

Materiel reserves which are to be delivered by air transport can be established ahead of time near the airfields or they can be shipped directly from front bases (their branches) as needed.

To receive the wounded and sick evacuated by air, we can set up evacuation reception points in the areas of materiel support airfields.

The preparation and maintenance of the materiel support airfields and airfield technical support on them are carried out according to the instructions of the air army commander and with his means.

472. The complete motorization and mechanization of our forces, their maneuverability in present-day operations, and the high rates of advance impose special requirements for the timely

and full provision of troops with fuel.

To achieve uninterrupted fuel supply, it is necessarry to always keep mobile reserves with the troops in amounts which will permit us to conduct swift combat actions on dissociated axes and also to ship fuel with timeliness by all types of transport.

The most reliable fuel delivery means in present-day operations are motor transport and field mainline pipelines.

Pipeline large units and units are used primarily to supply a front's main groupings and aviation with fuel.

In a front's zone of action we lay several pipelines to deliver the principal types of fuel (motor vehicle gasoline and diesel and aviation fuel).

473. Technical support in a front (army) operation is achieved by: the high-quality technical training of troop personnel and the personnel of repair and recovery units and subunits; the timely technical servicing, repair, and recovery of weapons and equipment; concentration of the main efforts of repair and recovery means on the principal axes and extensive maneuvering of them during the operation; continuous supplying of troops and repair units with technical items to service and repair equipment and weapons; and by maximum exploitation of local production and material capabilities for these purposes.

The technical servicing, repair, and recovery of missile and artillery weapons are carried out by the missile and artillery armament service: the same is done for wheeled and tracked vehicles of all types by the motor vehicle-tractor service and the tank armament service.

474. The repair of equipment and weapons is performed by troop and front repair means using, as a rule, prepared units, assemblies, and components.

Running repairs are effected by the repair means of units and large units; medium repairs are done by front and large unit repair means; and major repairs are done by enterprises subordinate to the center and by industrial plants, as well as by front repair means.

475. Front repair means usually are employed in a centralized manner, and they can be attached to armies when preparing an offensive operation and in the defense.

During an operation front repair means, as a rule, effect the repair of equipment at front (army) damaged vehicle collection points. Equipment repair is carried out to the extent which ensures that equipment is rapidly returned to service for use in its direct function. At the first opportunity, the work is carried out to its full extent.

Recovery means are used primarily to evacuate the equipment and weapons which can be rehabilitated in the shortest time.

476. The basis of medical support of troops in front (army) operations consists of carrying out medical treatment and evacuation measures on the spot. For these purposes, medical units and facilities are moved up to the areas and lines of massive casualties.

For the medical support of front (army) troops, on the main axes we set up hospital bases and branches (separate medical detachments), and we establish reserves of medical and antiepidemic facilities, ambulance means, medical personnel, and also medical stores.

In the hospital bases and their branches, the wounded and sick are provided with trained and specialized medical assistance and given medical treatment, and the wounded and sick requiring extended medical treatment are prepared for evacuation to the rear. The specified periods for the medical treatment of wounded and sick at hospital bases are established by the center depending on the situation, the number of medical casualties, and the medical treatment capabilities within the limits of the front.

Army medical detachments are set up behind the battle formations of the large units, and in cooperation with the medical-sanitary battalions of the large units, they provide the wounded and sick with trained medical aid, they provide medical treatment to the lightly wounded and sick and also prepare the remaining wounded and sick for evacuation or for on-site transfer to a hospital base. Depending on the situation, armies can be

reinforced by separate medical detachments from front means.

All front medical units and facilities are obligated to take in wounded and sick regardless of the unit, branch arm, or branch of the armed forces they belong to.

477. The wounded and sick from among the troops and from centers of mass destruction are evacuated to hospital bases in army and front medical motor transport, and in case of necessity, in supply transport. Empty supply transport returning to the rear area is used primarily to evacuate the wounded and sick. Evacuation beyond the limits of a front is carried out by regular military medical trains (medical transport ships) and military transport aircraft returning to the rear.

478. In an offensive operation, the hospital bases (their branches) in the departure area are deployed on the operating axes of the armies near the principal evacuation routes in readiness to receive and treat the wounded and sick arriving in the first days of the operation.

Hospital bases which have not been deployed are positioned in a dispersed manner in the front's rear zone ready to move out behind the troops in order to subsequently deploy in the course of the operation.

Separate medical detachments of the armies, other than those detailed to reinforce divisions, as a rule are not deployed in the departure area for the offensive, but are in readiness to move behind the first-echelon large units and to deploy so as to receive the wounded and sick from the troops during the operation.

The evacuation of wounded and sick from separate medical-sanitary battalions (separate medical detachments) is effected directly to the nearest deployed hospital bases and to their branches.

479. In a defensive operation, medical units are set up on the principal axes in an echeloned manner at distances permitting them to operate for a longer time without having to relocate to other areas.

To strengthen medical support and maneuvering during a defensive engagement, we establish a reserve of mobile medical units.

The evacuation of wounded and sick to the rear is accomplished by all types of transport and is done first of all from among the troops engaged in combat and also from centers of mass destruction which are under the threat of enemy capture.

480. When organizing veterinary support, special attention is devoted to detecting centers of bacterial contamination and of diseased animals with contagious illnesses which can be transitted to man, to carry out jointly with the medical service special measures to protect personnel against diseases common to both men and animals, and also to supervise the supplying of meat to the troops.

481. To receive, hold, and evacuate prisoners, we organize army prisoner of war points and front prisoner of war camps using rear security troop forces.

482. The constant threat of enemy use of weapons of mass destruction against rear installations and the possibility of an attack of sabotage groups and airborne landing forces increase the requirements to ensure the survivability of the operational rear services.

In the areas where we have positioned rear services large units, units, facilities, and reserves of materiel, as well as on transportation routes, we organize security and air defense, protection against nuclear, chemical, and bacteriological weapons, and also firefighting services and measures to combat sabotage groups and airborne landing forces.

Measures to protect, defend, and secure the rear area are worked out by the deputy commander for the rear together with the front (army) staff and are implemented by the rear services large units, units, and facilities, by rear security units of the front, and also by forces and means additionally detailed when necessary by instruction of the front (army) commander.

The air defense of the operational rear is organized and carried out within the overall system of the air defense of front

(army) troops.

Rear services units and facilities must be positioned and relocated covertly and in a dispersed manner; when moving and when situated in place they must exploit the protective features of the terrain as much as possible, prepare shelters in a short period of time, ensure that materiel is reliably protected against contamination by radioactive and toxic agents, rapidly restore their own working capacity, and eliminate the aftereffects of an enemy attack.

Missile technical units and missile propellant depots must be sheltered, protected, and covered from the air in a particularly reliable manner.

Rear services units and facilities and materiel reserves should not be positioned in the vicinity of railroad stations (ports, piers) and major inhabited localities.

483. The deputy commander for the rear exercises control over the rear services from the rear control post.

Communications of the rear control post are organized as follows:

-- with the other front (army) control posts and auxiliary centers;

-- with front (army) missile technical units and missile propellant depots, with the headquarters of front bases and with other rear services large units, units, and facilities; and

-- with the rear control posts of the armies (large units) and the staff of the rear of the Armed Forces (front rear control post).

Communications to control the rear services are carried out in the general communications system of the front (army) utilizing radio, radio-relay, wire, messenger, and other means of communication. In doing so, provisions are made to use both separate independent links as well as the general communications

channels of the front (army). To communicate with rear services units and facilities intended to support rocket troops, the general communications are used with a top-priority allocation of means and channels. In certain cases, direct channels may be allocated for this purpose.

TS # 778264
Copy # 3